

Document made available under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT)

International application number: PCT/US05/003537

International filing date: 28 January 2005 (28.01.2005)

Document type: Certified copy of priority document

Document details: Country/Office: US
Number: 60/581,314
Filing date: 18 June 2004 (18.06.2004)

Date of receipt at the International Bureau: 07 April 2005 (07.04.2005)

Remark: Priority document submitted or transmitted to the International Bureau in compliance with Rule 17.1(a) or (b)



World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO) - Geneva, Switzerland
Organisation Mondiale de la Propriété Intellectuelle (OMPI) - Genève, Suisse

1300922

THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

TO ALL TO WHOM THESE PRESENTS SHALL COME:

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

United States Patent and Trademark Office

March 24, 2005

THIS IS TO CERTIFY THAT ANNEXED HERETO IS A TRUE COPY FROM THE RECORDS OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE OF THOSE PAPERS OF THE BELOW IDENTIFIED PATENT APPLICATION THAT MET THE REQUIREMENTS TO BE GRANTED A FILING DATE.

APPLICATION NUMBER: 60/581,314

FILING DATE: *June 18, 2004*

RELATED PCT APPLICATION NUMBER: *PCT/US05/03537*



Certified by

Under Secretary of Commerce
for Intellectual Property
and Director of the United States
Patent and Trademark Office

061804
17509 U.S. PTO

PTO/SB/18 (01-04)
Approved for use through 07/31/2006. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT COVER SHEET

This is a request for filing a PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT under 37 CFR 1.53 (c).

Express Mail Label No. ER 273948065 US

INVENTOR(S)					
Given Name (first and middle (if any))		Family Name or Surname		Residence (City and either State or Foreign Country)	
Ho Sung Daniel Anna-Maria		Cho Thomas Hays		San Diego, United States San Diego, United States La Jolla, United States	
Additional inventors are being named on the _____ separately numbered sheets attached hereto					
TITLE OF THE INVENTION (500 characters max)					
Modified Human Interferon Polypeptides and Their Uses					
Direct all correspondence to: CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS					
<input type="checkbox"/> Customer Number:		<div>John Wallen, III Ambrx, Inc. 10410 Science Center Drive San Diego, CA 92121</div>			
OR					
<input type="checkbox"/> Firm or Individual	John Wallen				
Address					
Address					
City		State		Zip	
Country		Telephone		Fax	
ENCLOSED APPLICATION PARTS (check all that apply)					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Specification Number of Pages		177	<input type="checkbox"/>	CD(s), Number
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Drawing(s) Number of Sheets		5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Other (specify)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Application Data Sheet. See 37 CFR 1.76				
METHOD OF PAYMENT OF FILING FEES FOR THIS PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Applicant claims small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27.				<div>FILING FEE Amount (\$) \$80.00</div>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	A check or money order is enclosed to cover the filing fees.				
<input type="checkbox"/>	The Director is hereby authorized to charge filing fees or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account Number: _____				
<input type="checkbox"/>	Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.				
The invention was made by an agency of the United States Government or under a contract with an agency of the United States Government					
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	No.				
<input type="checkbox"/>	Yes, the name of the U.S. Government agency and the Government contract number are: _____				

22151 U.S. PTO
60/581314

061804

[Page 1 of 2]

Respectfully submitted,

SIGNATURE

TYPED or PRINTED NAME John Wallen

TELEPHONE (858) 731-3608

Date June 18, 2004

REGISTRATION NO. 35,403
(if appropriate)

Docket Number: AMBX-0019.00US

USE ONLY FOR FILING A PROVISIONAL APPLICATION FOR PATENT

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.51. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the PTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 8 hours to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the complete application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Mail Stop Provisional Application, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

PROVISIONAL APPLICATION COVER SHEET
Additional Page

PTO/SB/16 (08-03)

Approved for use through 07/31/2006. OMB 0651-0032

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

Docket Number **AMBX-0019.00US**

INVENTOR(S) /APPLICANT(S)		
Given Name (first and middle[if any])	Family or Surname	Residence (City and either State or Foreign Country)
Troy	Wilson, Ph.D., J.D.	San Marino, United States

[Page 2 of 2]

Number _____ of _____

WARNING: Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038.

ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. AMBX-0019.00US

IN THE U.S. PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
Provisional Application Cover Sheet

COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

This is a request for filing a PROVISIONAL APPLICATION under 37 CFR 1.53(c).

INVENTOR(s)/APPLICANT(s)

Last Name	First Name, MI	Residence (City and Either State or Foreign Country)
Cho	Ho Sung	San Diego, United States
Thomas	Daniel	San Diego, United States
Hays	Anna-Maria	La Jolla, United States

Additional inventors are being named on separately numbered sheets attached hereto.

TITLE OF THE INVENTION

Modified Human Interferon Polypeptides and Their Uses

CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

John Wallen, III
Ambrx, Inc.
10410 Science Center Drive
San Diego, CA 92121

ENCLOSED APPLICATION PARTS (check all that apply)

- (X) Specification *Number of Pages* 177
(X) Drawing(s) *Number of Pages* 5
(X) Power of Attorney
(X) Additional inventors are being named on separately numbered sheets attached hereto.

METHOD OF PAYMENT

A check in the amount of \$ \$80.00 to cover the filing fee is enclosed.

Charge \$ _____ to Deposit Account _____.

Respectfully submitted,

"Express Mail" label no. ER 273948065 US

Date of Deposit: 18 Jun 2004

I hereby certify this correspondence is being deposited with the United States Postal Service 'Express Mail Post Office to Addressee' service under 37 CFR 1.10 in an envelope addressed to the Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450, or the correspondence is being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO, on the date indicated above.

By John Wallen
Typed Name: John Wallen

John Wallen
Attorney/Agent for Applicant(s)
Reg. No.

Date: 18 Jun 2004

Telephone No.: (858) 731-3603

Provisional Application Cover Sheet (cont.)

INVENTOR(s)/APPLICANT(s)

Last Name	First Name, MI	Residence (City and Either State or Foreign Country)
Wilson, Ph.D., J.D.	Troy	San Marino, United States

Attorney Docket No.: AMBX-0019.00US

PROVISIONAL PATENT APPLICATION

Modified Human Interferon Polypeptides and Their Uses

Inventors:

Ho Sung Cho, a citizen of The United States, residing at 5340 Toscana Way #415, San Diego, California 92122

Thomas Daniel, a citizen of The United States, residing at 5951 La Jolla Mesa Drive, San Diego, California 92037

Anna-Maria Hays, a citizen of The United States, residing at 488 Dunemere Drive, La Jolla 92037

Troy Wilson, a citizen of The United States, residing at 575 Old Mill Road, San Marino, California 91108

Assignee: Ambrx, Inc.
10410 Science Center Drive
San Diego, California 92121

Small Entity Status

AMBRX, INC.
10410 Science Center Drive
San Diego, CA 92121
858-731-3603

Modified Human Interferon Polypeptides and Their Uses

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to interferon polypeptides modified with at least one non-naturally-
5 encoded amino acid.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

[01] The growth hormone (GH) supergene family (Bazan, F. *Immunology Today* 11: 350-354 (1991); Mott, H. R. and Campbell, I. D. *Current Opinion in Structural Biology* 10 5: 114-121 (1995); Silvennoinen, O. and Ihle, J. N. (1996) SIGNALING BY THE HEMATOPOIETIC CYTOKINE RECEPTORS) represents a set of proteins with similar structural characteristics. While there are still more members of the family yet to be identified, some members of the family include the following: growth hormone, prolactin, placental lactogen, erythropoietin (EPO), thrombopoietin (TPO), interleukin-2 (IL-2), IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-15 7, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12 (p35 subunit), IL-13, IL-15, oncostatin M, ciliary neurotrophic factor, leukemia inhibitory factor, alpha interferon, beta interferon, gamma interferon, omega interferon, tau interferon, granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (G-CSF), granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), macrophage colony stimulating factor (M-CSF) and cardiotrophin-1 (CT-1) ("the GH supergene family"). Members of the GH
20 supergene family have similar secondary and tertiary structures, despite the fact that they generally have limited amino acid or DNA sequence identity. The shared structural features allow new members of the gene family to be readily identified.

[02] Interferons are relatively small, single-chain glycoproteins released by cells invaded by viruses or exposed to certain other substances. Interferons are presently grouped
25 into three major classes, designated: 1) leukocyte interferon (interferon-alpha, α -interferon, IFN- α), 2) fibroblast interferon (interferon-beta, β -interferon, IFN- β), and 3) immune interferon (interferon-gamma, γ -interferon, IFN- γ). In response to viral infection, lymphocytes synthesize primarily α -interferon (with omega interferon, IFN- ω), while infection of fibroblasts usually induces β -interferon. IFN α and IFN β share about 20-30
30 percent amino acid sequence homology. The gene for human IFN- β lacks introns, and encodes a protein possessing 29% amino acid sequence identity with human IFN- α I,

suggesting that IFN- α and IFN- β genes have evolved from a common ancestor (Taniguchi et al., Nature 285 547-549 (1980)). By contrast, IFN- γ is synthesized by lymphocytes in response to mitogens. IFN α , IFN β and IFN ω are known to induce MHC Class I antigen expression and are referred to as type I interferons, while IFN γ induces MHC Class II antigen expression, and is referred to as type II interferon.

[03] A large number of distinct genes encoding different species of IFN α have been identified. Alpha interferons fall into two major classes, I and II, each containing a plurality of discrete proteins (Baron et al., Critical Reviews in Biotechnology 10, 1790190 (1990); Nagata et al., Nature 287, 401-408 (1980); Nagata et al., Nature 284 316-320(1980); Streuli et al., Science 209, 1343-1347(1980); Goeddel et al., Nature 290, 20-26 (1981); Lawn et al., Science 212, 1159-1162 (1981); Ullrich et al., J. Mol. Biol. 156, 467-486 (1982); Weissmann et al., Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B299, 7-28 (1982); Lund et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 81, 2435-2439 (1984); Capon et al., Mol. Cell. Biol. 5, 768 (1985)). The various IFN- α species include IFN- α A (IFN- α 2), IFN- α B, IFN- α C, IFN- α C1, IFN- α D (IFN- α 1), IFN- α E, IFN- α F, IFN- α G, IFN- α H, IFN- α I, IFN- α J1, IFN- α J2, IFN- α K, IFN- α L, IFN- α 4B, IFN- α 5, IFN- α 6, IFN- α 74, IFN- α 76 IFN- α 4a), IFN- α 88, and alleles thereof.

[04] Interferons were originally derived from naturally occurring sources, such as buffy coat leukocytes and fibroblast cells, optionally using inducing agents to increase interferon production. Interferons have also been produced by recombinant DNA technology.

[05] The cloning and expression of recombinant IFN α A (IFN α A, also known as IFN α 2) was described by Goeddel et al., Nature 287, 411 (1980). The amino acid sequences of IFN α A, B, C, D, F, G, H, K and L, along with the encoding nucleotide sequences, are described by Pestka in Archiv. Biochem. Biophys. 221, 1 (1983). The cloning and expression of mature IFN β is described by Goeddel et al., Nucleic Acids Res. 8, 4057 (1980). The cloning and expression of mature IFN γ are described by Gray et al., Nature 295, 503 (1982). IFN ω has been described by Capon et al., Mol. Cell. Biol. 5, 768 (1985). IFN τ has been identified and disclosed by Whaley et al., J. Biol. Chem. 269, 10864-8 (1994).

[06] Interferons have a variety of biological activities, including antiviral, immunoregulatory and antiproliferative properties, and have been utilized as therapeutic agents for treatment of diseases such as cancer, and various viral diseases. Interferon- α 's have been shown to inhibit various types of cellular proliferation, and are especially useful for the treatment of a variety of cellular proliferation disorders frequently associated with cancer, particularly hematologic malignancies such as leukemias. These proteins have shown antiproliferative activity against multiple myeloma, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, low-grade

lymphoma, Kaposi's sarcoma, chronic myelogenous leukemia, renal-cell carcinoma, urinary bladder tumors and ovarian cancers (Bonnem, E. M. et al. (1984) *J. Biol. Response Modifiers* 3:580; Oldham, R. K. (1985) *Hospital Practice* 20:71).

[07] Covalent attachment of the hydrophilic polymer poly(ethylene glycol), abbreviated PEG, is a method of increasing water solubility, bioavailability, increasing serum half-life, increasing therapeutic half-life, modulating immunogenicity, modulating biological activity, or extending the circulation time of many biologically active molecules, including proteins, peptides, and particularly hydrophobic molecules. PEG has been used extensively in pharmaceuticals, on artificial implants, and in other applications where biocompatibility, lack of toxicity, and lack of immunogenicity are of importance. In order to maximize the desired properties of PEG, the total molecular weight and hydration state of the PEG polymer or polymers attached to the biologically active molecule must be sufficiently high to impart the advantageous characteristics typically associated with PEG polymer attachment, such as increased water solubility and circulating half life, while not adversely impacting the bioactivity of the parent molecule.

[08] PEG derivatives are frequently linked to biologically active molecules through reactive chemical functionalities, such as lysine, cysteine and histidine residues, the N-terminus and carbohydrate moieties. Proteins and other molecules often have a limited number of reactive sites available for polymer attachment. Often, the sites most suitable for modification via polymer attachment play a significant role in receptor binding, and are necessary for retention of the biological activity of the molecule. As a result, indiscriminate attachment of polymer chains to such reactive sites on a biologically active molecule often leads to a significant reduction or even total loss of biological activity of the polymer-modified molecule. R. Clark et al., (1996), *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:21969-21977. To form conjugates having sufficient polymer molecular weight for imparting the desired advantages to a target molecule, prior art approaches have typically involved random attachment of numerous polymer arms to the molecule, thereby increasing the risk of a reduction or even total loss in bioactivity of the parent molecule.

[09] Reactive sites that form the loci for attachment of PEG derivatives to proteins are dictated by the protein's structure. Proteins, including enzymes, are built of various sequences of alpha-amino acids, which have the general structure $H_2N-CHR-COOH$. The alpha amino moiety (H_2N-) of one amino acid joins to the carboxyl moiety ($-COOH$) of an adjacent amino acid to form amide linkages, which can be represented as $-(NH-CHR-CO)_n-$, where the subscript "n" can equal hundreds or thousands. The fragment represented by R

can contain reactive sites for protein biological activity and for attachment of PEG derivatives.

[10] For example, in the case of the amino acid lysine, there exists an ϵ -NH₂ moiety in the epsilon position as well as in the alpha position. The epsilon ϵ -NH₂ is free for reaction under conditions of basic pH. Much of the art in the field of protein derivatization with PEG has been directed to developing PEG derivatives for attachment to the epsilon ϵ -NH₂ moiety of lysine residues present in proteins. "Polyethylene Glycol and Derivatives for Advanced PEGylation", Nektar Molecular Engineering Catalog, 2003, pp. 1-17. These PEG derivatives all have the common limitation, however, that they cannot be installed selectively among the often numerous lysine residues present on the surfaces of proteins. This can be a significant limitation in instances where a lysine residue is important to protein activity, existing in an enzyme active site for example, or in cases where a lysine residue plays a role in mediating the interaction of the protein with other biological molecules, as in the case of receptor binding sites.

[11] A second and equally important complication of existing methods for protein PEGylation is that the PEG derivatives can undergo undesired side reactions with residues other than those desired. Histidine contains a reactive imino moiety, represented structurally as --N(H)-- , but many derivatives that react with epsilon ϵ -NH₂ can also react with --N(H)-- . Similarly, the side chain of the amino acid cysteine bears a free sulfhydryl group, represented structurally as --SH . In some instances, the PEG derivatives directed at the epsilon ϵ -NH₂ group of lysine also react with cysteine, histidine or other residues. This can create complex, heterogeneous mixtures of PEG-derivatized bioactive molecules and risks destroying the activity of the bioactive molecule being targeted. It would be desirable to develop PEG derivatives that permit a chemical functional group to be introduced at a single site within the protein that would then enable the selective coupling of one or more PEG polymers to the bioactive molecule at specific sites on the protein surface that are both well-defined and predictable.

[12] In addition to lysine residues, considerable effort in the art has been directed toward the development of activated PEG reagents that target other amino acid side chains, including cysteine, histidine and the N-terminus. U.S. Pat. No. 6,610,281. "Polyethylene Glycol and Derivatives for Advanced PEGylation", Nektar Molecular Engineering Catalog, 2003, pp. 1-17. Cysteine residue can be introduced site-selectively into the structure of proteins using site-directed mutagenesis and other techniques known in the art, and the resulting free sulfhydryl moiety can be reacted with PEG derivatives that bear thiol-reactive

functional groups. This approach is complicated, however, in that the introduction of a free sulfhydryl group can complicate the expression, folding and stability of the resulting protein. Thus, it would be desirable to have a means to introduce a chemical functional group into bioactive molecules that enables the selective coupling of one or more PEG polymers to the protein while simultaneously being compatible with (i.e., not engaging in undesired side reactions with) sulfhydryls and other chemical functional groups typically found in proteins.

[13] As can be seen from a sampling of the art, many of these derivatives that have been developed for attachment to the side chains of proteins, in particular, the --NH₂ moiety on the lysine amino acid side chain and the -SH moiety on the cysteine side chain, have proven problematic in their synthesis and use. Some form unstable linkages with the protein that are subject to hydrolysis and therefore decompose, degrade, or are otherwise unstable in aqueous environments, such as in the blood stream. Some form more stable linkages, but are subject to hydrolysis before the linkage is formed, which means that the reactive group on the PEG derivative may be inactivated before the protein can be attached. Some are somewhat toxic and are therefore less suitable for use in vivo. Some are too slow to react to be practically useful. Some result in a loss of protein activity by attaching to sites responsible for the protein's activity. Some are not specific in the sites to which they will attach, which can also result in a loss of desirable activity and in a lack of reproducibility of results. In order to overcome the challenges associated with modifying proteins with poly(ethylene glycol) moieties, PEG derivatives have been developed that are more stable (e.g., U.S. Patent 6,602,498) or that react selectively with thiol moieties on molecules and surfaces (e.g., U.S. Patent 6,610,281). There is clearly a need in the art for PEG derivatives that are chemically inert in physiological environments until called upon to react selectively to form stable chemical bonds.

[14] Recently, an entirely new technology in the protein sciences has been reported, which promises to overcome many of the limitations associated with site-specific modifications of proteins. Specifically, new components have been added to the protein biosynthetic machinery of the prokaryote *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) (e.g., L. Wang, et al., (2001), *Science* 292:498-500) and the eukaryote *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (*S. cerevisiae*) (e.g., J. Chin et al., *Science* 301:964-7 (2003)), which has enabled the incorporation of non-genetically encoded amino acids to proteins *in vivo*. A number of new amino acids with novel chemical, physical or biological properties, including photoaffinity labels and photoisomerizable amino acids, keto amino acids, and glycosylated amino acids have been incorporated efficiently and with high fidelity into proteins in *E. coli* and in yeast in response

to the amber codon, TAG, using this methodology. *See, e.g.*, J. W. Chin et al., (2002), Journal of the American Chemical Society 124:9026-9027; J. W. Chin, & P. G. Schultz, (2002), ChemBioChem 11:1135-1137; J. W. Chin, et al., (2002), PNAS United States of America 99:11020-11024; and, L. Wang, & P. G. Schultz, (2002), Chem. Comm., 1-10.

5 These studies have demonstrated that it is possible to selectively and routinely introduce chemical functional groups, such as alkyne groups and azide moieties, that are not found in proteins, that are chemically inert to all of the functional groups found in the 20 common, genetically-encoded amino acids and that may be used to react efficiently and selectively to form stable covalent linkages.

10 [15] The ability to incorporate non-genetically encoded amino acids into proteins permits the introduction of chemical functional groups that could provide valuable alternatives to the naturally-occurring functional groups, such as the epsilon -NH₂ of lysine, the sulfhydryl -SH of cysteine, the imino group of histidine, etc. Certain chemical functional groups are known to be inert to the functional groups found in the 20 common, genetically-
15 encoded amino acids but react cleanly and efficiently to form stable linkages. Azide and acetylene groups, for example, are known in the art to undergo a Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition reaction in aqueous conditions in the presence of a catalytic amount of copper. *See, e.g.*, Tornøe, et al., (2002) Org. Chem. 67:3057-3064; and, Rostovtsev, et al., (2002) Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 41:2596-2599. By introducing an azide moiety into a protein structure, for
20 example, one is able to incorporate a functional group that is chemically inert to amines, sulfhydryls, carboxylic acids, hydroxyl groups found in proteins, but that also reacts smoothly and efficiently with an acetylene moiety to form a cycloaddition product. Importantly, in the absence of the acetylene moiety, the azide remains chemically inert and unreactive in the presence of other protein side chains and under physiological conditions.

25 [16] The present invention addresses, among other things, problems associated with the activity and production of IFN, and also addresses the production of a hIFN polypeptide with improved biological or pharmacological properties, such as improved therapeutic half-life.

30 BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[17] This invention provides GH supergene family members, including hIFN polypeptides, comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid.

[18] In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide is linked to a second hIFN polypeptide.

[19] In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid is linked to a water soluble polymer. In some embodiments, the water soluble polymer comprises a poly(ethylene glycol) moiety. In some embodiments, the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule is a bifunctional polymer. In some embodiments, the bifunctional polymer is linked to a second polypeptide. In some embodiments, the second polypeptide is a hIFN polypeptide.

[20] In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide comprises at least two amino acids linked to a water soluble polymer comprising a poly(ethylene glycol) moiety. In some embodiments, at least one amino acid is a non-naturally encoded amino acid.

[21] In some embodiments, the one or more non-naturally encoded amino acids are incorporated at any position in one or more of the following regions corresponding to secondary structures in IFN as follows: 1-9 (N-terminus), 10-21 (A helix), 22-39 (region between A helix and B helix), 40-75 (B helix), 76-77 (region between B helix and C helix), 78-100 (C helix), 101-110 (region between C helix and D helix), 111-132 (D helix), 133-136 (region between D and E helix) 137-155 (E helix) 156-165 (C-terminus). In some embodiments, the one or more non-naturally encoded amino acids are incorporated in one of the following positions in IFN: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120, 121, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 100, 106, 107, 108, 111, 113, 114. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 41, 45, 46, 48, 49. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 61, 64, 65, 101, 103, 110, 117, 120, 121, 149. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 6, 9, 12, 13, 16, 96, 156, 159, 160, 161, 162. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109, 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165. In some

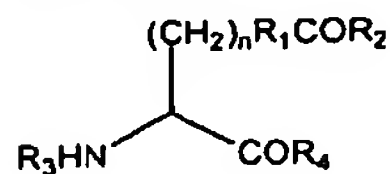
embodiments, the non-naturally occurring amino acid at these or other positions is linked to a water soluble molecule, including but not limited to positions: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120, 121, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165. In some embodiments, the non-naturally occurring amino acid is linked to a water soluble polymer at one or more of the following positions: 6, 9, 13, 16, 41, 45, 46, 48, 49, 61, 65, 96, 100, 101, 103, 106, 107, 108, 110, 111, 113, 114, 117, 120, 149, 156, 159, 160, 161 and 162 (SEQ ID NO:2; or the corresponding amino acid in SEQ ID NO:1, 3 or any other IFN polypeptide). In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions providing an antagonist: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109, 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165.

[22] In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide comprises a substitution, addition or deletion that increases affinity of the hIFN polypeptide for an hIFN receptor. In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide comprises a substitution, addition, or deletion that increases the stability of the hIFN polypeptide. In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide comprises a substitution, addition, or deletion that increases the aqueous solubility of the hIFN polypeptide. In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide comprises a substitution, addition, or deletion that increases the solubility of the hIFN polypeptide produced in a host cell.

[23] In some embodiments the amino acid substitutions in the hIFN polypeptide may be with naturally occurring or non-naturally occurring amino acids, provided that at least one substitution is with a non-naturally encoded amino acid.

[24] In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises a carbonyl group, an acetyl group, an aminooxy group, a hydrazine group, a hydrazide group, a semicarbazide group, an azide group, or an alkyne group.

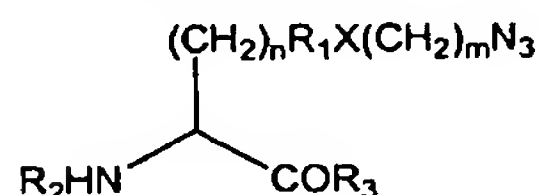
[25] In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises a carbonyl group. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid has the structure:



wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, or substituted aryl; R₂ is H, an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, and substituted aryl; and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus modification group, and R₄ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus modification group.

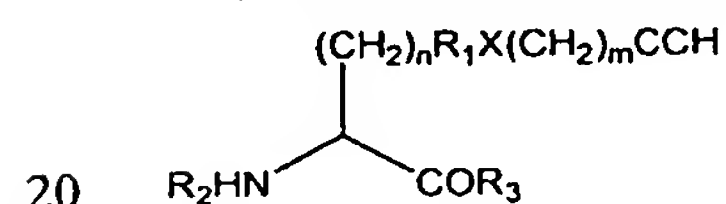
5 [26] In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises an aminooxy group. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises a hydrazide group. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises a hydrazine group. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid residue comprises a semicarbazide group.

10 [27] In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid residue comprises an azide group. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid has the structure:



wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, substituted aryl or not present; X is 15 O, N, S or not present; m is 0-10; R₂ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus modification group, and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus modification group.

[28] In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises an alkyne group. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid has the structure:



20 wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, or substituted aryl; X is O, N, S or not present; m is 0-10, R₂ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus modification group, and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus modification group.

25 [29] In some embodiments, the polypeptide is an hIFN agonist, partial agonist, antagonist, partial antagonist, or inverse agonist. In some embodiments, the hIFN agonist, partial agonist, antagonist, partial antagonist, or inverse agonist comprises a non-naturally encoded amino acid is linked to a water soluble polymer. In some embodiments, the water soluble polymer comprises a poly(ethylene glycol) moiety. In some embodiments, the non- 30 naturally encoded amino acid linked to a water soluble polymer is present within the Site 2 region (the region of the protein encompassing the AC helical-bundle face) of hIFN. In some

embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid linked to a water soluble polymer prevents dimerization of the hIFN receptor by preventing the hIFN antagonist from binding to a second hIFN receptor molecule.

[30] The present invention also provides isolated nucleic acids comprising a polynucleotide that hybridizes under stringent conditions to SEQ ID NO: 24, or 25 wherein the polynucleotide comprises at least one selector codon. In some embodiments, the selector codon is selected from the group consisting of an amber codon, ochre codon, opal codon, a unique codon, a rare codon, and a four-base codon.

[31] The present invention also provides methods of making a hIFN polypeptide linked to a water soluble polymer. In some embodiments, the method comprises contacting an isolated hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid with a water soluble polymer comprising a moiety that reacts with the non-naturally encoded amino acid. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid incorporated into hIFN is reactive toward a water soluble polymer that is otherwise unreactive toward any of the 20 common amino acids.

[32] In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide linked to the water soluble polymer is made by reacting a hIFN polypeptide comprising a carbonyl-containing amino acid with a poly(ethylene glycol) molecule comprising an aminooxy, a hydroxylamine, hydrazine, hydrazide or semicarbazide group. In some embodiments, the aminooxy, hydroxylamine, hydrazine, hydrazide or semicarbazide group is linked to the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule through an amide linkage.

[33] In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide linked to the water soluble polymer is made by reacting a poly(ethylene glycol) molecule comprising a carbonyl group with a polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid that comprises a hydroxylamine, hydrazide or semicarbazide group.

[34] In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide linked to the water soluble polymer is made by reacting a hIFN polypeptide comprising an alkyne-containing amino acid with a poly(ethylene glycol) molecule comprising an azide moiety. In some embodiments, the azide or alkyne group is linked to the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule through an amide linkage.

[35] In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptide linked to the water soluble polymer is made by reacting a hIFN polypeptide comprising an azide-containing amino acid with a poly(ethylene glycol) molecule comprising an alkyne moiety. In some embodiments,

the azide or alkyne group is linked to the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule through an amide linkage.

[36] In some embodiments, the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule has a molecular weight of between about 1 and about 100 kDa. In some embodiments, the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule has a molecular weight of between 1 kDa and 50 kDa.

[37] In some embodiments, the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule is a branched polymer. In some embodiments, each branch of the poly(ethylene glycol) branched polymer has a molecular weight of between 1 kDa and 100 kDa, or between 1 kDa and 50 kDa.

[38] In some embodiments, the water soluble polymer linked to hIFN comprises a polyalkylene glycol moiety. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid residue incorporated into hIFN comprises a carbonyl group, an acetyl group, an aminooxy group, a hydrazide group, a semicarbazide group, an azide group, or an alkyne group. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid residue incorporated into hIFN comprises a carbonyl moiety and the water soluble polymer comprises an aminooxy, a hydroxylamine, hydrazide or semicarbazide moiety. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid residue incorporated into hIFN comprises an alkyne moiety and the water soluble polymer comprises an azide moiety. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid residue incorporated into hIFN comprises an azide moiety and the water soluble polymer comprises an alkyne moiety.

[39] The present invention also provides compositions comprising a hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally-encoded amino acid and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid is linked to a water soluble polymer.

[40] The present invention also provides cells comprising a polynucleotide encoding the hIFN polypeptide comprising a selector codon. In some embodiments, the cells comprise an orthogonal RNA synthetase and/or an orthogonal tRNA for substituting a non-naturally encoded amino acid into the hIFN polypeptide.

[41] The present invention also provides methods of making a hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid. In some embodiments, the methods comprise culturing cells comprising a polynucleotide or polynucleotides encoding a hIFN polypeptide, an orthogonal RNA synthetase and an orthogonal tRNA under conditions to permit expression of the hIFN polypeptide; and purifying the hIFN polypeptide from the cells and/or culture medium.

[42] The present invention also provides methods of increasing therapeutic half-life, serum half-life or circulation time of hIFN. In some embodiments, the methods comprise substituting a non-naturally encoded amino acid for any one or more amino acids in naturally occurring hIFN and/or linking the hIFN polypeptide to a water soluble polymer.

5 [43] The present invention also provides methods of treating a patient in need of such treatment with an effective amount of a hIFN molecule of the present invention. In some embodiments, the methods comprise administering to the patient a therapeutically-effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition comprising a hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally-encoded amino acid and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. In some
10 embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid is linked to a water soluble polymer.

[44] The present invention also provides hIFN polypeptides comprising a sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 1, 2, or any other IFN polypeptide sequence, except that at least one amino acid is substituted by a non-naturally encoded amino acid. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid is linked to a water soluble polymer. In some
15 embodiments, the water soluble polymer comprises a poly(ethylene glycol) moiety. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises a carbonyl group, an aminooxy group, a hydrazide group, a hydrazine group, a semicarbazide group, an azide group, or an alkyne group.

[45] The present invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising
20 a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and an hIFN polypeptide comprising the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 1, 2, or any other IFN polypeptide sequence, wherein at least one amino acid is substituted by a non-naturally encoded amino acid. In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises a saccharide moiety. In some embodiments, the water soluble polymer is linked to the polypeptide via a saccharide moiety.

25

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

[46] Figure 1 – A diagram of the general structure for four helical bundle proteins is shown.

[47] Figure 2 – A diagram of the general structure for the four helical bundle
30 protein Growth Hormone (GH) is shown.

[48] Figure 3 – A diagram of the general structure for the four helical bundle protein Erythropoietin (EPO) is shown.

[49] Figure 4 – A diagram of the general structure for the four helical bundle protein Interferon alfa (IFN- α) is shown.

[50] Figure 5 – A diagram of the general structure for the four helical bundle protein Granulocyte Colony Stimulating Factor (G-CSF) is shown.

DEFINITIONS

5 [51] It is to be understood that this invention is not limited to the particular methodology, protocols, cell lines, constructs, and reagents described herein and as such may vary. It is also to be understood that the terminology used herein is for the purpose of describing particular embodiments only, and is not intended to limit the scope of the present invention, which will be limited only by the appended claims.

10 [52] As used herein and in the appended claims, the singular forms “a,” “an,” and “the” include plural reference unless the context clearly indicates otherwise. Thus, for example, reference to a “hIFN” is a reference to one or more such proteins and includes equivalents thereof known to those skilled in the art, and so forth.

[53] Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have
15 the same meaning as commonly understood to one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. Although any methods, devices, and materials similar or equivalent to those described herein can be used in the practice or testing of the invention, the preferred methods, devices and materials are now described.

[54] All publications and patents mentioned herein are incorporated herein by
20 reference for the purpose of describing and disclosing, for example, the constructs and methodologies that are described in the publications, which might be used in connection with the presently described invention. The publications discussed herein are provided solely for their disclosure prior to the filing date of the present application. Nothing herein is to be construed as an admission that the inventors are not entitled to antedate such disclosure by
25 virtue of prior invention or for any other reason.

[55] The term “substantially purified” refers to hIFN that may be substantially or
essentially free of components that normally accompany or interact with the protein as found
in its naturally occurring environment, i.e. a native cell, or host cell in the case of
recombinantly produced hIFN. hIFN that may be substantially free of cellular material
30 includes preparations of protein having less than about 30%, less than about 25%, less than
about 20%, less than about 15%, less than about 10%, less than about 5%, less than about
4%, less than about 3%, less than about 2%, or less than about 1% (by dry weight) of
contaminating protein. When the hIFN or variant thereof is recombinantly produced by the
host cells, the protein may be present at about 30%, about 25%, about 20%, about 15%, about

10%, about 5%, about 4%, about 3%, about 2%, or about 1% or less of the dry weight of the cells. When the hIFN or variant thereof is recombinantly produced by the host cells, the protein may be present in the culture medium at about 5g/L, about 4g/L, about 3g/L, about 2g/L, about 1g/L, about 750mg/L, about 500mg/L, about 250mg/L, about 100mg/L, about 50mg/L, about 10mg/L, or about 1mg/L or less of the dry weight of the cells. Thus, "substantially purified" hIFN as produced by the methods of the present invention may have a purity level of at least about 30%, at least about 35%, at least about 40%, at least about 45%, at least about 50%, at least about 55%, at least about 60%, at least about 65%, at least about 70%, specifically, a purity level of at least about 75%, 80%, 85%, and more specifically, a purity level of at least about 90%, a purity level of at least about 95%, a purity level of at least about 99% or greater as determined by appropriate methods such as SDS/PAGE analysis, RP-HPLC, SEC, and capillary electrophoresis.

[56] A "recombinant host cell" or "host cell" refers to a cell that includes an exogenous polynucleotide, regardless of the method used for insertion, for example, direct uptake, transduction, f-mating, or other methods known in the art to create recombinant host cells. The exogenous polynucleotide may be maintained as a nonintegrated vector, for example, a plasmid, or alternatively, may be integrated into the host genome.

[57] As used herein, the term "medium" or "media" includes any culture medium, solution, solid, semi-solid, or rigid support that may support or contain any host cell, including bacterial host cells, yeast host cells, insect host cells, plant host cells, eukaryotic host cells, mammalian host cells, CHO cells or *E. coli*, and cell contents. Thus, the term may encompass medium in which the host cell has been grown, e.g., medium into which the hIFN has been secreted, including medium either before or after a proliferation step. The term also may encompass buffers or reagents that contain host cell lysates, such as in the case where hIFN is produced intracellularly and the host cells are lysed or disrupted to release the hIFN.

[58] "Reducing agent," as used herein with respect to protein refolding, is defined as any compound or material which maintains sulfhydryl groups in the reduced state and reduces intra- or intermolecular disulfide bonds. Suitable reducing agents include, but are not limited to, dithiothreitol (DTT), 2-mercaptoethanol, dithioerythritol, cysteine, cysteamine (2-aminoethanethiol), and reduced glutathione. It is readily apparent to those of ordinary skill in the art that a wide variety of reducing agents are suitable for use in the methods of the present invention.

[59] "Oxidizing agent," as used herein with respect to protein refolding, is defined as any compound or material which is capable of removing an electron from a compound

being oxidized. Suitable oxidizing agents include, but are not limited to, oxidized glutathione, cystine, cystamine, oxidized dithiothreitol, oxidized erythreitol, and oxygen. It is readily apparent to those of ordinary skill in the art that a wide variety of oxidizing agents are suitable for use in the methods of the present invention.

5 [60] "Denaturing agent" or "denaturant," as used herein, is defined as any compound or material which will cause a reversible unfolding of a protein. The strength of a denaturing agent or denaturant will be determined both by the properties and the concentration of the particular denaturing agent or denaturant. Suitable denaturing agents or denaturants may be chaotropes, detergents, organic, water miscible solvents, phospholipids, 10 or a combination of two or more such agents. Suitable chaotropes include, but are not limited to, urea, guanidine, and sodium thiocyanate. Useful detergents may include, but are not limited to, strong detergents such as sodium dodecyl sulfate, or polyoxyethylene ethers (e.g. Tween or Triton detergents), Sarkosyl, mild non-ionic detergents (e.g., digitonin), mild cationic detergents such as N-2,3-(Dioleyoxy)-propyl-N,N,N-trimethylammonium, mild 15 ionic detergents (e.g. sodium cholate or sodium deoxycholate) or zwitterionic detergents including, but not limited to, sulfobetaines (Zwittergent), 3-(3-chloramidopropyl)dimethylammonio-1-propane sulfate (CHAPS), and 3-(3-chloramidopropyl)dimethylammonio-2-hydroxy-1-propane sulfonate (CHAPSO). Organic, water miscible solvents such as acetonitrile, lower alkanols (especially C₂ - C₄ alkanols such 20 as ethanol or isopropanol), or lower alkandriols (especially C₂ - C₄ alkandriols such as ethylene-glycol) may be used as denaturants. Phospholipids useful in the present invention may be naturally occurring phospholipids such as phosphatidylethanolamine, phosphatidylcholine, phosphatidylserine, and phosphatidylinositol or synthetic phospholipid derivatives or variants such as dihexanoylphosphatidylcholine or 25 diheptanoylphosphatidylcholine.

[61] "Refolding," as used herein describes any process, reaction or method which transforms disulfide bond containing polypeptides from an improperly folded or unfolded state to a native or properly folded conformation with respect to disulfide bonds.

30 [62] "Cofolding," as used herein, refers specifically to refolding processes, reactions, or methods which employ at least two polypeptides which interact with each other and result in the transformation of unfolded or improperly folded polypeptides to native, properly folded polypeptides.

[63] As used herein, "interferon" or "IFN" shall include those polypeptides and proteins that have at least one biological activity of a human interferon, including but not

limited to IFN α , IFN β , IFN γ , IFN ω , IFN ϵ , or IFN τ (such as those described in U.S. Patent 4,414,150; 4,456,748; 4,727,138; 4,762,791, 4,929,554; 5,096,705; 4,695,623; 4,614,651; 4,678,751; 4,925,793; 5,460,811; 5,120,832; 4,780,530; 4,908,432; 4,970,161; 4,973,479; 4,975,276; 5,098,703; 5,278,286; 5,661,009; 6,372,206; 6,433,144; 6,472,512; 6,572,853; 5 6,703,225; 6,200,780; 6,299,869; 6,300,475; 6,323,006; 6,350,589; 5,705,363; 5,738,845; 5,789,551; 6,117,423; 6,174,996; 5,540,923; 5,541,293; 5,541,312; 5,554,513; 5,593,667 which are incorporated by reference herein), as well as IFN analogs, IFN isoforms, IFN mimetics, IFN fragments, hybrid IFN proteins, fusion proteins oligomers and multimers, homologues, glycosylation pattern variants, and muteins, thereof, regardless of the biological activity of same, and further regardless of the method of synthesis or manufacture thereof including, but not limited to, recombinant (whether produced from cDNA, genomic DNA, synthetic DNA or other form of nucleic acid), synthetic, transgenic, and gene activated methods. Specific examples of IFN include, but are not limited to, IFN γ -1b (Actimmune®), IFN β -1a (Avonex®, and Rebif®), IFN β -1b (Betaseron®), consensus IFN, IFN alfacon-1 15 (Infergen®), IFN α -2 (Intron A®), IFN α -2a (Roferon-A®), Peginterferon alfa-2a (Pegasys®), Peginterferon beta-1a (PEG-Intron®), IFN analog, IFN mutants, altered glycosylated human IFN, and PEG conjugated IFN analogs. Specific examples of cells modified for expression of endogenous human IFN are described in Devlin et al., J.Leukoc.Biol. 41:306 (1987); U.S. Patent No.6,716,606; 6,610,830; 6,482,613; 6,489,144; 6,159,712; 5,814,485; 5,710,027; 20 5,595,888; 4,966,843; 6,379,661; 6,004,548; 5,830,705; 5,582,823; 4,810,643; and 6,242,218; which are incorporated by reference herein.

[64] The term "human IFN (hIFN)" or "hIFN polypeptide" refers to interferon or IFN as described above, as well as a polypeptide that retains at least one biological activity of a naturally-occurring hIFN. hIFN polypeptides include the pharmaceutically acceptable salts and prodrugs, and prodrugs of the salts, polymorphs, hydrates, solvates, biologically-active 25 fragments, biologically-active variants and stereoisomers of the naturally-occurring human IFN as well as agonist, mimetic, and antagonist variants of the naturally-occurring human IFN and polypeptide fusions thereof. Examples of hIFN polypeptides include, but are not limited to, those described in U.S. Patent No. 4,604,284; 5,582,824; 6,531,122; 6,204,022; 30 6,120,762; 6,046,034; 6,036,956; 5,939,286; 5,908,626; 5,780,027; 5,770,191; 5,723,125; 5,594,107; 5,378,823; 4,898,931; 4,892,743; which are incorporated by reference herein. Fusions comprising additional amino acids at the amino terminus, carboxyl terminus, or both, are encompassed by the term "hIFN polypeptide." Exemplary fusions include, but are not limited to, e.g., methionyl IFN in which a methionine is linked to the N-terminus of hIFN

AMBX-0019.00US

resulting from the recombinant expression of the mature form of hIFN lacking the secretion signal peptide or portion thereof, fusions for the purpose of purification (including but not limited to, to poly-histidine or affinity epitopes), fusions with serum albumin binding peptides and fusions with serum proteins such as serum albumin. The naturally-occurring hIFN nucleic acid and amino acid sequences for full-length and mature forms are known, as are variants such as single amino acid variants or splice variants.

[65] Consensus interferon is a recombinant type 1 interferon containing 166 amino acids. Consensus IFN was derived by scanning the sequences of several natural alpha interferons and assigning the most frequently observed amino acid in each corresponding position. Consensus IFN, when compared on an equal mass basis with IFN α -2a and α -2b in *in vitro* assays, typically displays 5-10 times higher biological activity (Blatt et al. J Interferon Cytokine Res 1996;16:489-99).

[66] For the complete full-length naturally-occurring IFN α -2a amino acid sequence as well as the mature naturally-occurring IFN α -2a amino acid sequence, see SEQ ID NO:1, and SEQ ID NO:2, respectively, herein. In some embodiments, hIFN polypeptides of the invention are substantially identical to SEQ ID NO:1, or SEQ ID NO:2, or any other sequence of an interferon polypeptide. Nucleic acid molecules encoding hIFN mutants and mutant hIFN polypeptides are well known and include, but are not limited to, those disclosed in U.S. Patent No.: 6,331,525; 6,069,133; 5,955,307; 5,869,293; 5,831,062; 5,081,022; 5,004,689; 4,738,931; 4,686,191; which are incorporated by reference herein. Examples of hIFN mutants include those disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 6,514,729; 5,582,824;, which are incorporated by reference herein.

[67] Interferons have a variety of biological activities, including antiviral, immunoregulatory and antiproliferative properties, and have been utilized as therapeutic agents for treatment of diseases such as cancer, and various viral diseases. Interferon- α 's have been shown to inhibit various types of cellular proliferation, and are especially useful for the treatment of a variety of cellular proliferation disorders frequently associated with cancer, particularly hematologic malignancies such as leukemias. These proteins have shown antiproliferative activity against multiple myeloma, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, low-grade lymphoma, Kaposi's sarcoma, chronic myelogenous leukemia, renal-cell carcinoma, urinary bladder tumors and ovarian cancers (Bonnem, E. M. et al. (1984) J. Biol. Response Modifiers 3:580; Oldham, R. K. (1985) Hospital Practice 20:71).

[68] IFN α 's are useful against various types of viral infections (Finter, N. B. et al. (1991) Drugs 42(5):749). Interferon- α 's have shown activity against human papillomavirus

infection, Hepatitis B, and Hepatitis C infections (Finter, N. B. et al., 1991, supra; Kashima, H. et al. (1988) *Laryngoscope* 98:334; Dusheiko, G. M. et al. (1986) *J. Hematology* 3 (Supple. 2):S199; Davis, G L et al. (1989) *N. England J. Med.* 321:1501). The role of interferons and interferon receptors in the pathogenesis of certain autoimmune and inflammatory diseases has also been investigated (Benoit, P. et al. (1993) *J. Immunol.* 150(3):707). In addition, interferon- α has been approved for use for the treatment of diseases such as hairy cell leukemia, renal cell carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma, malignant melanoma, AIDS-related Kaposi's sarcoma, multiple myeloma, chronic myelogenous leukemia, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, laryngeal papillomatosis, mycosis fungoides, condyloma acuminata, chronic hepatitis B, hepatitis C, chronic hepatitis D, and chronic non-A, non-B/C hepatitis.

[69] Interferons have been implicated in the pathogenesis of various autoimmune diseases, such as systemic lupus erythematoses, Behcet's disease, and insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM, also referred to as type I diabetes). It has been demonstrated in a transgenic mouse model that β cell expression of IFN- α can cause insulinitis and IDDM, and IFN- α antagonists (including antibodies) have been proposed for the treatment of IDDM (WO 93/04699, published Mar. 18, 1993). Impaired IFN- γ and IFN- α production has been observed in multiple sclerosis (MP) patients. IFN- α has been detected in the serum of many AIDS patients, and it has been reported that the production of IFN- γ is greatly suppressed in suspensions of mitogen-stimulated mononuclear cells derived from AIDS patients. For a review see, for example, Chapter 16, "The Presence and Possible Pathogenic Role of Interferons in Disease", In: *Interferons and other Regulatory Cytokines*, Edward de Maeyer (1988, John Wiley and Sons publishers). Alpha and beta interferons have been used in the treatment of the acute viral disease herpes zoster (T. C. Merigan et al, *N. Engl. J. Med.* 298, 981-987 (1978); E. Heidemann et al., *Onkologie* 7, 210-212 (1984)), chronic viral infections, e.g. hepatitis C and hepatitis B infections (R. L. Knobler et al., *Neurology* 34, 1273078 (1984); M. A. Faerkkilae et al., *Act. Neurol. Sci.* 69, 184-185 (1985)). rIFN α -2a (Roferon®, Roche) is an injection formulation indicated in use for the treatment of hairy cell leukemia and AIDS-related Kaposi's sarcoma. Recombinant IFN α -2b (Intron A™, Schering) has been approved for the treatment of hairy cell leukemia, selected cases of condylomata acuminata, AIDS-related Kaposi's sarcoma, chronic hepatitis C, and chronic hepatitis B infections in certain patients. Compositions of multiple subtypes of IFN α are also used to treat a variety of diseases (Multiferon®, Viragen, Inc.). IFN γ 1b (Actimmune®, Intermune Pharmaceuticals,

Inc.) is commercially available for the treatment of chronic granulomatous disease and malignant osteopetrosis.

[70] The biologic activities of type I IFNs have been disclosed and are known in the art, and can be found, for example, in Pfeffer, *Semin. Oncol.* 24(suppl 9), S9-63-S9-69 (1997) and U.S. Patent No.: 6,436,391; 6,372,218; 6,270,756; 6,207,145; 6,086,869; 6,036,949; 6,013,253; 6,007,805; 5,980,884; 5,958,402; 5,863,530; 5,849,282; 5,846,526; 5,830,456; 5,824,300; 5,817,307; 5,780,021; 5,624,895; 5,480,640; 5,268,169; 5,208,019; 5,196,191; 5,190,751; 5,104,653; 5,019,382; 5,959,210; which are incorporated by reference herein.

10 [71] IFN α 's are members of the diverse helical-bundle superfamily of cytokine genes (Sprang, S. R. et al. (1993) *Curr. Opin. Struct. Biol.* 3:815-827). The human interferon α 's are encoded by a family of over 20 tandemly duplicated nonallelic genes that share 85-98% sequence identity at the amino acid level (Henco, K. et al. (1985) *J. Mol. Biol.* 185:227-260). Human IFN β is a regulatory polypeptide with a molecular weight of about 22 kDa consisting of 166 amino acid residues. It can be produced by most cells in the body, in particular fibroblasts, in response to viral infection or exposure to other agents. It binds to a multimeric cell surface receptor, and productive receptor binding results in a cascade of intracellular events leading to the expression of IFN β inducible genes which in turn produces effects which can be classified as antiviral, anti-proliferative and immunomodulatory.

20 [72] The amino acid sequence of human IFN β is known and was reported for example by Taniguchi, *Gene* 10:11-15, 1980, and in EP 83069, EP 41313 and U.S. Pat. No. 4,686,191 which are incorporated by reference herein. Crystal structures have been reported for human and murine IFN β , respectively (*Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 94:11813-11818, 1997; *J. Mol. Biol.* 253:187-207, 1995; U.S. Patent No.: 5,602,232; 5,460,956; 5,441,734; 25 4,672,108; which are incorporated by reference herein). They have been reviewed in *Cell Mol. Life Sci.* 54:1203-1206, 1998. Variants of IFN β have been reported (WO 9525170, WO 9848018, U.S. Pat. No. 5,545,723, U.S. Pat. No. 4,914,033, EP 260350, U.S. Pat. No. 4,588,585, U.S. Pat. No. 4,769,233, Stewart et al, *DNA Vol 6 no2* 1987 pp. 119-128, Runkel et al, 1998, *J. Biol. Chem.* 273, No. 14, pp. 8003-8008, which are incorporated by reference 30 herein). Expression of IFN β in CHO cells has been reported (U.S. Pat. No. 4,966,843, U.S. Pat. No. 5,376,567 and U.S. Pat. No. 5,795,779, which are incorporated by reference herein). IFN β molecules with a particular glycosylation pattern and methods for their preparation have been reported (EP 287075 and EP 529300).

[73] Various references disclose modification of polypeptides by polymer conjugation or glycosylation. Polymer modification of native IFN β or a C17S variant thereof has been reported (EP 229108, U.S. Pat. No. 5,382,657; EP 593868; U.S. Pat. No. 4,917,888 and WO 99/55377, which are incorporated by reference herein). U.S. Pat. No. 4,904,584
 5 discloses PEGylated lysine depleted polypeptides, wherein at least one lysine residue has been deleted or replaced with any other amino acid residue. WO 99/67291 discloses a process for conjugating a protein with PEG, wherein at least one amino acid residue on the protein is deleted and the protein is contacted with PEG under conditions sufficient to achieve conjugation to the protein. WO 99/03887 discloses PEGylated variants of polypeptides
 10 belonging to the growth hormone superfamily, wherein a cysteine residue has been substituted with a non-essential amino acid residue located in a specified region of the polypeptide. Examples of PEGylated IFN molecules include those disclosed in U.S. Patent No.: 6,524,570; 6,250,469; 6,180,096; 6,177,074; 6,042,822; 5,981,709; 5,951,974; 5,908,621; 5,738,846; 5,711,944; 5,382,657, which are incorporated by reference herein.
 15 IFN β is mentioned as one example of a polypeptide belonging to the growth hormone superfamily. WO 00/23114 discloses glycosylated and pegylated IFN β . WO 00/23472 discloses IFN β fusion proteins. WO 00/26354 discloses a method of producing a glycosylated polypeptide variant with reduced allergenicity, which as compared to a corresponding parent polypeptide comprises at least one additional glycosylation site. U.S. Pat. No. 5,218,092
 20 discloses modification of granulocyte colony stimulating factor (G-CSF) and other polypeptides so as to introduce at least one additional carbohydrate chain as compared to the native polypeptide. IFN β is disclosed as one example among many polypeptides that can be modified according to the technology described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,218,092.

[74] Commercial preparations of IFN β are sold under the names Betaseron® (also
 25 termed interferon β 1b, which is non-glycosylated, produced using recombinant bacterial cells, has a deletion of the N-terminal methionine residue and the C17S mutation), and Avonex™ and Rebif® (also termed interferon β 1a, which is glycosylated, produced using recombinant mammalian cells) for treatment of patients with multiple sclerosis, have shown to be effective in reducing the exacerbation rate, and more patients remain exacerbation-free
 30 for prolonged periods of time as compared with placebo-treated patients. Furthermore, the accumulation rate of disability is reduced (Neurol. 51:682-689, 1998).

[75] Comparison of IFN β 1a and β 1b with respect to structure and function has been presented in Pharmaceut. Res. 15:641-649, 1998. IFN β has been shown to delay the progression of multiple sclerosis, a relapsing then progressive inflammatory degenerative

disease of the central nervous system. IFN β may have inhibitory effects on the proliferation of leukocytes and antigen presentation. IFN β may modulate the profile of cytokine production towards an anti-inflammatory phenotype. IFN β can reduce T-cell migration by inhibiting the activity of T-cell matrix metalloproteases. These activities are likely to act in concert to account for the mechanism of IFN β in MS (Neurol. 51:682-689, 1998).

[76] IFN β may be used for the treatment of osteosarcoma, basal cell carcinoma, cervical dysplasia, glioma, acute myeloid leukemia, multiple myeloma, Hodgkin's disease, breast carcinoma, melanoma, and viral infections such as papilloma virus, viral hepatitis, herpes genitalis, herpes zoster, herpetic keratitis, herpes simplex, viral encephalitis, cytomegalovirus pneumonia, and rhinovirus. Various side effects are associated with the use of current preparations of IFN β , including injection site reactions, fever, chills, myalgias, arthralgias, and other flu-like symptoms (Clin. Therapeutics, 19:883-893, 1997).

[77] Given the multitude of side effects with current IFN β products, their association with frequent injection, the risk of developing neutralizing antibodies impeding the desired therapeutic effect of IFN β , and the potential for obtaining more optimal therapeutic IFN β levels with concomitant enhanced therapeutic effect, there is clearly a need for improved IFN β -like molecules.

[78] The term "hIFN polypeptide" also includes N-linked or O-linked glycosylated forms of the polypeptide, including but not limited to a polypeptide with an O-linked glycosylation site at position 129 of SEQ ID NO:1, or the equivalent position of SEQ ID NO:2 or 3, or any other IFN polypeptide (Adolf et al., Biochem.J. 276:511 (1991)). Variants containing single nucleotide changes are also considered as biologically active variants of hIFN. In addition, splice variants are also included. The term "hIFN polypeptide" also includes hIFN heterodimers, homodimers, heteromultimers, or homomultimers of any one or more hIFN or any other polypeptide, protein, carbohydrate, polymer, small molecule, ligand, or other active molecule of any type, linked by chemical means or expressed as a fusion protein, as well as polypeptide analogues containing, for example, specific deletions or other modifications yet maintain biological activity.

[79] All references to amino acid positions in hIFN described herein are based on the position in SEQ ID NO:2, unless otherwise specified (i.e., when it is stated that the comparison is based on SEQ ID NO:1, 3, or other sequence). Those of skill in the art will appreciate that amino acid positions corresponding to positions in SEQ ID NO:1, 2, 3, or any other IFN sequence can be readily identified in any other hIFN molecule such as hIFN fusions, variants, fragments, etc. For example, sequence alignment programs such as BLAST

AMBX-0019.00US

can be used to align and identify a particular position in a protein that corresponds with a position in SEQ ID NO: 1, 2, 3, or other IFN sequence. Substitutions, deletions or additions of amino acids described herein in reference to SEQ ID NO: 1, 2, 3, or other IFN sequence are intended to also refer to substitutions, deletions or additions in corresponding positions in hIFN fusions, variants, fragments, etc. described herein or known in the art and are expressly encompassed by the present invention.

[80] The term "hIFN polypeptide" encompasses hIFN polypeptides comprising one or more amino acid substitutions, additions or deletions. Exemplary substitutions in a wide variety of amino acid positions in naturally-occurring hIFN have been described, including but not limited to substitutions that modulate one or more of the biological activities of hIFN, such as but not limited to, increase agonist activity, increase solubility of the polypeptide, convert the polypeptide into an antagonist, etc. and are encompassed by the term "hIFN polypeptide."

[81] Human IFN antagonists include, but are not limited to, those with a substitutions at: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109, 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165 (SEQ ID NO:2, or the corresponding amino acid in SEQ ID NO: 1, or any other IFN sequence). In some embodiments, hIFN antagonists comprise at least one substitution in the regions 1-9 (N-terminus), 10-21 (A helix), 22-39 (region between A helix and B helix), 40-75 (B helix), 76-77 (region between B helix and C helix), 78-100 (C helix), 101-110 (region between C helix and D helix), 111-132 (D helix), 133-136 (region between D and E helix) 137-155 (E helix) 156-165 (C-terminus) that cause IFN to act as an antagonist. In some embodiments, the hIFN antagonist comprises a non-naturally encoded amino acid linked to a water soluble polymer that is present in a receptor binding region of the hIFN molecule. In some embodiments the water soluble polymer is coupled to the IFN polypeptide at one or more of the amino acid positions: 6, 9, 13, 16, 41, 45, 46, 48, 49, 61, 65, 96, 100, 101, 103, 106, 107, 108, 110, 111, 113, 114, 117, 120, 149, 156, 159, 160, 161 and 162 (SEQ ID NO:2, or the corresponding amino acid in SEQ ID NO:1, 3 or any other IFN polypeptide).

[82] In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptides further comprise an addition, substitution or deletion that modulates biological activity of hIFN. For example, the additions, substitutions or deletions may modulate affinity for the hIFN receptor, modulate (including but not limited to, increases or decreases) receptor dimerization, stabilize receptor dimers, modulate circulating half-life, modulate therapeutic half-life, modulate stability of the

polypeptide, modulate dose, modulate release or bio-availability, facilitate purification, or improve or alter a particular route of administration. Similarly, hIFN polypeptides may comprise protease cleavage sequences, reactive groups, antibody-binding domains (including but not limited to, FLAG or poly-His) or other affinity based sequences (including but not limited to, FLAG, poly-His, GST, etc.) or linked molecules (including but not limited to, biotin) that improve detection (including but not limited to, GFP), purification or other traits of the polypeptide.

[83] The term "hIFN polypeptide" also encompasses hIFN homodimers, heterodimers, homomultimers, and heteromultimers that are linked, including but not limited to those linked directly via non-naturally encoded amino acid side chains, either to the same or different non-naturally encoded amino acid side chains, to naturally-encoded amino acid side chains, or indirectly via a linker. Exemplary linkers including but are not limited to, water soluble polymers such as poly(ethylene glycol) or polydextran or a polypeptide.

[84] A "non-naturally encoded amino acid" refers to an amino acid that is not one of the 20 common amino acids or pyrrolysine or selenocysteine. The term "non-naturally encoded amino acid" includes, but is not limited to, amino acids that occur naturally by modification of a naturally encoded amino acid (including but not limited to, the 20 common amino acids or pyrrolysine and selenocysteine) but are not themselves incorporated into a growing polypeptide chain by the translation complex. Examples of naturally-occurring amino acids that are not naturally-encoded include, but are not limited to, *N*-acetylglucosaminyl-L-serine, *N*-acetylglucosaminyl-L-threonine, and O-phosphotyrosine.

[85] An "amino terminus modification group" refers to any molecule that can be attached to the amino terminus of a polypeptide. Similarly, a "carboxy terminus modification group" refers to any molecule that can be attached to the carboxy terminus of a polypeptide. Terminus modification groups include but are not limited to various water soluble polymers, peptides or proteins such as serum albumin, or other moieties that increase serum half-life of peptides.

[86] The terms "functional group", "active moiety", "activating group", "leaving group", "reactive site", "chemically reactive group" and "chemically reactive moiety" are used in the art and herein to refer to distinct, definable portions or units of a molecule. The terms are somewhat synonymous in the chemical arts and are used herein to indicate the portions of molecules that perform some function or activity and are reactive with other molecules.

[87] The term "linkage" or "linker" is used herein to refer to groups or bonds that normally are formed as the result of a chemical reaction and typically are covalent linkages. Hydrolytically stable linkages means that the linkages are substantially stable in water and do not react with water at useful pH values, including but not limited to, under physiological conditions for an extended period of time, perhaps even indefinitely. Hydrolytically unstable or degradable linkages means that the linkages are degradable in water or in aqueous solutions, including for example, blood. Enzymatically unstable or degradable linkages means that the linkage can be degraded by one or more enzymes. As understood in the art, PEG and related polymers may include degradable linkages in the polymer backbone or in the linker group between the polymer backbone and one or more of the terminal functional groups of the polymer molecule. For example, ester linkages formed by the reaction of PEG carboxylic acids or activated PEG carboxylic acids with alcohol groups on a biologically active agent generally hydrolyze under physiological conditions to release the agent. Other hydrolytically degradable linkages include but are not limited to carbonate linkages; imine linkages resulted from reaction of an amine and an aldehyde; phosphate ester linkages formed by reacting an alcohol with a phosphate group; hydrazone linkages which are reaction product of a hydrazide and an aldehyde; acetal linkages that are the reaction product of an aldehyde and an alcohol; orthoester linkages that are the reaction product of a formate and an alcohol; peptide linkages formed by an amine group, including but not limited to, at an end of a polymer such as PEG, and a carboxyl group of a peptide; and oligonucleotide linkages formed by a phosphoramidite group, including but not limited to, at the end of a polymer, and a 5' hydroxyl group of an oligonucleotide.

[88] The term "biologically active molecule", "biologically active moiety" or "biologically active agent" when used herein means any substance which can affect any physical or biochemical properties of a biological organism, including but not limited to viruses, bacteria, fungi, plants, animals, and humans. In particular, as used herein, biologically active molecules include but are not limited to any substance intended for diagnosis, cure, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of disease in humans or other animals, or to otherwise enhance physical or mental well-being of humans or animals. Examples of biologically active molecules include, but are not limited to, peptides, proteins, enzymes, small molecule drugs, dyes, lipids, nucleosides, oligonucleotides, cells, viruses, liposomes, microparticles and micelles. Classes of biologically active agents that are suitable for use with the invention include, but are not limited to, antibiotics, fungicides, anti-viral agents,

AMBX-0019.00US

anti-inflammatory agents, anti-tumor agents, cardiovascular agents, anti-anxiety agents, hormones, growth factors, steroidal agents, and the like.

[89] A "bifunctional polymer" refers to a polymer comprising two discrete functional groups that are capable of reacting specifically with other moieties (including but not limited to, amino acid side groups) to form covalent or non-covalent linkages. A bifunctional linker having one functional group reactive with a group on a particular biologically active component, and another group reactive with a group on a second biological component, may be used to form a conjugate that includes the first biologically active component, the bifunctional linker and the second biologically active component.

10 Many procedures and linker molecules for attachment of various compounds to peptides are known. See, e.g., European Patent Application No. 188,256; U.S. Patent Nos. 4,671,958, 4,659,839, 4,414,148, 4,699,784; 4,680,338; 4,569,789; and 4,589,071 which are incorporated by reference herein. A "multi-functional polymer" refers to a polymer comprising two or more discrete functional groups that are capable of reacting specifically

15 with other moieties (including but not limited to, amino acid side groups) to form covalent or non-covalent linkages.

[90] Where substituent groups are specified by their conventional chemical formulas, written from left to right, they equally encompass the chemically identical substituents that would result from writing the structure from right to left, for example,

20 -CH₂O- is equivalent to -OCH₂-.

[91] The term "substituents" includes but is not limited to "non-interfering substituents". "Non-interfering substituents" are those groups that yield stable compounds. Suitable non-interfering substituents or radicals include, but are not limited to, halo, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, C₂-C₁₀ alkenyl, C₂-C₁₀ alkynyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkoxy, C₁-C₁₂ aralkyl, C₁-C₁₂ alkaryl, C₃-C₁₂ cycloalkyl, C₃-C₁₂ cycloalkenyl, phenyl, substituted phenyl, toluoyl, xylenyl, biphenyl, C₂-C₁₂ alkoxyalkyl, C₂-C₁₂ alkoxyaryl, C₇-C₁₂ aryloxyalkyl, C₇-C₁₂ oxyaryl, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfinyl, C₁-C₁₀ alkylsulfonyl, --(CH₂)_m --O--(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl) wherein m is from 1 to 8, aryl, substituted aryl, substituted alkoxy, fluoroalkyl, heterocyclic radical, substituted heterocyclic radical, nitroalkyl, --NO₂, --CN, --NRC(O)--(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), --C(O)--(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), C₂-C₁₀ alkyl thioalkyl, --C(O)O--(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl), --OH, --SO₂, =S, --COOH, --NR₂, carbonyl, --C(O)--(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl)-CF₃, --C(O)--CF₃, --C(O)NR₂, --(C₁-C₁₀ aryl)-S--(C₆-C₁₀ aryl), --C(O)--(C₁-C₁₀ aryl), --(CH₂)_m --O--(--(CH₂)_m --O--(C₁-C₁₀ alkyl) wherein each m is from 1 to 8, --C(O)NR₂, --C(S)NR₂, --SO₂NR₂, --NRC(O)NR₂, --NRC(S)NR₂, salts thereof, and the like. Each R as used herein is H, alkyl or substituted alkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, aralkyl, or alkaryl.

25

30

[92] The term "halogen" includes fluorine, chlorine, iodine, and bromine.

[93] The term "alkyl," by itself or as part of another substituent, means, unless otherwise stated, a straight or branched chain, or cyclic hydrocarbon radical, or combination thereof, which may be fully saturated, mono- or polyunsaturated and can include di- and multivalent radicals, having the number of carbon atoms designated (*i.e.* C₁-C₁₀ means one to ten carbons). Examples of saturated hydrocarbon radicals include, but are not limited to, groups such as methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, t-butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, cyclohexyl, (cyclohexyl)methyl, cyclopropylmethyl, homologs and isomers of, for example, n-pentyl, n-hexyl, n-heptyl, n-octyl, and the like. An unsaturated alkyl group is one having one or more double bonds or triple bonds. Examples of unsaturated alkyl groups include, but are not limited to, vinyl, 2-propenyl, crotyl, 2-isopentenyl, 2-(butadienyl), 2,4-pentadienyl, 3-(1,4-pentadienyl), ethynyl, 1- and 3-propynyl, 3-butylnyl, and the higher homologs and isomers. The term "alkyl," unless otherwise noted, is also meant to include those derivatives of alkyl defined in more detail below, such as "heteroalkyl." Alkyl groups which are limited to hydrocarbon groups are termed "homoalkyl".

[94] The term "alkylene" by itself or as part of another substituent means a divalent radical derived from an alkane, as exemplified, but not limited, by the structures -CH₂CH₂- and -CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂-, and further includes those groups described below as "heteroalkylene." Typically, an alkyl (or alkylene) group will have from 1 to 24 carbon atoms, with those groups having 10 or fewer carbon atoms being preferred in the present invention. A "lower alkyl" or "lower alkylene" is a shorter chain alkyl or alkylene group, generally having eight or fewer carbon atoms.

[95] The terms "alkoxy," "alkylamino" and "alkylthio" (or thioalkoxy) are used in their conventional sense, and refer to those alkyl groups attached to the remainder of the molecule via an oxygen atom, an amino group, or a sulfur atom, respectively.

[96] The term "heteroalkyl," by itself or in combination with another term, means, unless otherwise stated, a stable straight or branched chain, or cyclic hydrocarbon radical, or combinations thereof, consisting of the stated number of carbon atoms and at least one heteroatom selected from the group consisting of O, N, Si and S, and wherein the nitrogen and sulfur atoms may optionally be oxidized and the nitrogen heteroatom may optionally be quaternized. The heteroatom(s) O, N and S and Si may be placed at any interior position of the heteroalkyl group or at the position at which the alkyl group is attached to the remainder of the molecule. Examples include, but are not limited to, -CH₂-CH₂-O-CH₃, -CH₂-CH₂-NH-CH₃, -CH₂-CH₂-N(CH₃)-CH₃, -CH₂-S-CH₂-CH₃, -CH₂-CH₂-S(O)-CH₃, -CH₂-CH₂-S(O)₂-

CH₃, -CH=CH-O-CH₃, -Si(CH₃)₃, -CH₂-CH=N-OCH₃, and -CH=CH-N(CH₃)-CH₃. Up to two heteroatoms may be consecutive, such as, for example, -CH₂-NH-OCH₃ and -CH₂-O-Si(CH₃)₃. Similarly, the term "heteroalkylene" by itself or as part of another substituent means a divalent radical derived from heteroalkyl, as exemplified, but not limited by, -CH₂-CH₂-S-CH₂-CH₂- and -CH₂-S-CH₂-CH₂-NH-CH₂-. For heteroalkylene groups, the same or different heteroatoms can also occupy either or both of the chain termini (including but not limited to, alkyleneoxy, alkylenedioxy, alkyleneamino, alkylenediamino, aminooxyalkylene, and the like). Still further, for alkylene and heteroalkylene linking groups, no orientation of the linking group is implied by the direction in which the formula of the linking group is written. For example, the formula -C(O)₂R'- represents both -C(O)₂R'- and -R'C(O)₂-.

[97] The terms "cycloalkyl" and "heterocycloalkyl", by themselves or in combination with other terms, represent, unless otherwise stated, cyclic versions of "alkyl" and "heteroalkyl", respectively. Thus, a cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl include saturated and unsaturated ring linkages. Additionally, for heterocycloalkyl, a heteroatom can occupy the position at which the heterocycle is attached to the remainder of the molecule. Examples of cycloalkyl include, but are not limited to, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, 1-cyclohexenyl, 3-cyclohexenyl, cycloheptyl, and the like. Examples of heterocycloalkyl include, but are not limited to, 1-(1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridyl), 1-piperidinyl, 2-piperidinyl, 3-piperidinyl, 4-morpholinyl, 3-morpholinyl, tetrahydrofuran-2-yl, tetrahydrofuran-3-yl, tetrahydrothien-2-yl, tetrahydrothien-3-yl, 1-piperazinyl, 2-piperazinyl, and the like.

[98] As used herein, the term "water soluble polymer" refers to any polymer that is soluble in aqueous solvents. Linkage of water soluble polymers to hIFN can result in changes including, but not limited to, increased or modulated serum half-life, or increased or modulated therapeutic half-life relative to the unmodified form, modulated immunogenicity, modulated physical association characteristics such as aggregation and multimer formation, altered receptor binding and altered receptor dimerization or multimerization. The water soluble polymer may or may not have its own biological activity. Suitable polymers include, but are not limited to, polyethylene glycol, polyethylene glycol propionaldehyde, mono C1-C10 alkoxy or aryloxy derivatives thereof (described in U.S. Patent No. 5,252,714 which is incorporated by reference herein), monomethoxy-polyethylene glycol, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyamino acids, divinylether maleic anhydride, *N*-(2-Hydroxypropyl)-methacrylamide, dextran, dextran derivatives including dextran sulfate, polypropylene glycol, polypropylene oxide/ethylene oxide copolymer, polyoxyethylated polyol, heparin, heparin fragments, polysaccharides, oligosaccharides, glycans, cellulose and cellulose derivatives,

including but not limited to methylcellulose and carboxymethyl cellulose, starch and starch derivatives, polypeptides, polyalkylene glycol and derivatives thereof, copolymers of polyalkylene glycols and derivatives thereof, polyvinyl ethyl ethers, and alpha-beta-poly[(2-hydroxyethyl)-DL-aspartamide, and the like, or mixtures thereof. Examples of such water soluble polymers include but are not limited to polyethylene glycol and serum albumin.

[99] As used herein, the term "polyalkylene glycol" refers to polyethylene glycol, polypropylene glycol, polybutylene glycol, and derivatives thereof. The term "polyalkylene glycol" encompasses both linear and branched polymers and average molecular weights of between 1 kDa and 100 kDa. Other exemplary embodiments are listed, for example, in commercial supplier catalogs, such as Shearwater Corporation's catalog "Polyethylene Glycol and Derivatives for Biomedical Applications" (2001).

[100] The term "aryl" means, unless otherwise stated, a polyunsaturated, aromatic, hydrocarbon substituent which can be a single ring or multiple rings (preferably from 1 to 3 rings) which are fused together or linked covalently. The term "heteroaryl" refers to aryl groups (or rings) that contain from one to four heteroatoms selected from N, O, and S, wherein the nitrogen and sulfur atoms are optionally oxidized, and the nitrogen atom(s) are optionally quaternized. A heteroaryl group can be attached to the remainder of the molecule through a heteroatom. Non-limiting examples of aryl and heteroaryl groups include phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 4-biphenyl, 1-pyrrolyl, 2-pyrrolyl, 3-pyrrolyl, 3-pyrazolyl, 2-imidazolyl, 4-imidazolyl, pyrazinyl, 2-oxazolyl, 4-oxazolyl, 2-phenyl-4-oxazolyl, 5-oxazolyl, 3-isoxazolyl, 4-isoxazolyl, 5-isoxazolyl, 2-thiazolyl, 4-thiazolyl, 5-thiazolyl, 2-furyl, 3-furyl, 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-pyrimidyl, 4-pyrimidyl, 5-benzothiazolyl, purinyl, 2-benzimidazolyl, 5-indolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 5-isoquinolyl, 2-quinoxaliny, 5-quinoxaliny, 3-quinolyl, and 6-quinolyl. Substituents for each of the above noted aryl and heteroaryl ring systems are selected from the group of acceptable substituents described below.

[101] For brevity, the term "aryl" when used in combination with other terms (including but not limited to, aryloxy, arylthioxy, arylalkyl) includes both aryl and heteroaryl rings as defined above. Thus, the term "arylalkyl" is meant to include those radicals in which an aryl group is attached to an alkyl group (including but not limited to, benzyl, phenethyl, pyridylmethyl and the like) including those alkyl groups in which a carbon atom (including but not limited to, a methylene group) has been replaced by, for example, an oxygen atom (including but not limited to, phenoxymethyl, 2-pyridyloxymethyl, 3-(1-naphthyloxy)propyl, and the like).

[102] Each of the above terms (including but not limited to, "alkyl," "heteroalkyl," "aryl" and "heteroaryl") are meant to include both substituted and unsubstituted forms of the indicated radical. Exemplary substituents for each type of radical are provided below.

[103] Substituents for the alkyl and heteroalkyl radicals (including those groups often referred to as alkylene, alkenyl, heteroalkylene, heteroalkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, and heterocycloalkenyl) can be one or more of a variety of groups selected from, but not limited to: -OR', =O, =NR', =N-OR', -NR'R'', -SR', -halogen, -SiR'R''R''', -OC(O)R', -C(O)R', -CO₂R', -CONR'R'', -OC(O)NR'R'', -NR''C(O)R', -NR'-C(O)NR''R''', -NR''C(O)₂R', -NR-C(NR'R''R''')=NR''', -NR-C(NR'R'')=NR''', -S(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)₂NR'R'', -NRSO₂R', -CN and -NO₂ in a number ranging from zero to (2m'+1), where m' is the total number of carbon atoms in such a radical. R', R'', R''' and R'''' each independently refer to hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted heteroalkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, including but not limited to, aryl substituted with 1-3 halogens, substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, alkoxy or thioalkoxy groups, or arylalkyl groups.

15 When a compound of the invention includes more than one R group, for example, each of the R groups is independently selected as are each R', R'', R''' and R'''' groups when more than one of these groups is present. When R' and R'' are attached to the same nitrogen atom, they can be combined with the nitrogen atom to form a 5-, 6-, or 7-membered ring. For example, -NR'R'' is meant to include, but not be limited to, 1-pyrrolidinyl and 4-morpholinyl. From the

20 above discussion of substituents, one of skill in the art will understand that the term "alkyl" is meant to include groups including carbon atoms bound to groups other than hydrogen groups, such as haloalkyl (including but not limited to, -CF₃ and -CH₂CF₃) and acyl (including but not limited to, -C(O)CH₃, -C(O)CF₃, -C(O)CH₂OCH₃, and the like).

[104] Similar to the substituents described for the alkyl radical, substituents for the aryl and heteroaryl groups are varied and are selected from, but are not limited to: halogen, -OR', =O, =NR', =N-OR', -NR'R'', -SR', -halogen, -SiR'R''R''', -OC(O)R', -C(O)R', -CO₂R', -CONR'R'', -OC(O)NR'R'', -NR''C(O)R', -NR'-C(O)NR''R''', -NR''C(O)₂R', -NR-C(NR'R''R''')=NR''', -NR-C(NR'R'')=NR''', -S(O)R', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)₂NR'R'', -NRSO₂R', -CN and -NO₂, -R', -N₃, -CH(Ph)₂, fluoro(C₁-C₄)alkoxy, and fluoro(C₁-C₄)alkyl, in a number ranging from zero to the total number of open valences on the aromatic ring system; and where R', R'', R''' and R'''' are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, heteroalkyl, aryl and heteroaryl. When a compound of the invention includes more than one R group, for example, each of the R groups is independently selected as are each R', R'', R''' and R'''' groups when more than one of these groups is present.

30

- [105] As used herein, the term "modulated serum half-life" means the positive or negative change in circulating half-life of a modified biologically active molecule relative to its non-modified form. Serum half-life is measured by taking blood samples at various time points after administration of the biologically active molecule, and determining the concentration of that molecule in each sample. Correlation of the serum concentration with time allows calculation of the serum half-life. Increased serum half-life desirably has at least about two-fold, but a smaller increase may be useful, for example where it enables a satisfactory dosing regimen or avoids a toxic effect. In some embodiments, the increase is at least about three-fold, at least about five-fold, or at least about ten-fold.
- 10 [106] The term "modulated therapeutic half-life" as used herein means the positive or negative change in the half-life of the therapeutically effective amount of a modified biologically active molecule, relative to its non-modified form. Therapeutic half-life is measured by measuring pharmacokinetic and/or pharmacodynamic properties of the molecule at various time points after administration. Increased therapeutic half-life desirably enables a particular beneficial dosing regimen, a particular beneficial total dose, or avoids an undesired effect. In some embodiments, the increased therapeutic half-life results from increased potency, increased or decreased binding of the modified molecule to its target, or an increase or decrease in another parameter or mechanism of action of the non-modified molecule.
- 15 [107] The term "isolated," when applied to a nucleic acid or protein, denotes that the nucleic acid or protein is substantially free of other cellular components with which it is associated in the natural state. It can be in a homogeneous state. Isolated substances can be in either a dry or semi-dry state, or in solution, including but not limited to an aqueous solution. Purity and homogeneity are typically determined using analytical chemistry techniques such as polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis or high performance liquid chromatography. A protein which is the predominant species present in a preparation is substantially purified. In particular, an isolated gene is separated from open reading frames which flank the gene and encode a protein other than the gene of interest. The term "purified" denotes that a nucleic acid or protein gives rise to substantially one band in an electrophoretic gel. Particularly, it means that the nucleic acid or protein is at least 85% pure, at least 90% pure, at least 95% pure, at least 99% or greater pure.
- 20 [108] The term "nucleic acid" refers to deoxyribonucleotides or ribonucleotides and polymers thereof in either single- or double-stranded form. Unless specifically limited, the term encompasses nucleic acids containing known analogues of natural nucleotides which
- 25
- 30

have similar binding properties as the reference nucleic acid and are metabolized in a manner similar to naturally occurring nucleotides. Unless otherwise indicated, a particular nucleic acid sequence also implicitly encompasses conservatively modified variants thereof (including but not limited to, degenerate codon substitutions) and complementary sequences as well as the sequence explicitly indicated. Specifically, degenerate codon substitutions may be achieved by generating sequences in which the third position of one or more selected (or all) codons is substituted with mixed-base and/or deoxyinosine residues (Batzner *et al.*, *Nucleic Acid Res.* 19:5081 (1991); Ohtsuka *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 260:2605-2608 (1985); and Cassol *et al.* (1992); Rossolini *et al.*, *Mol. Cell. Probes* 8:91-98 (1994)).

10 [109] The terms "polypeptide," "peptide" and "protein" are used interchangeably herein to refer to a polymer of amino acid residues. The terms apply to naturally occurring amino acid polymers as well as amino acid polymers in which one or more amino acid residues is a non-naturally encoded amino acid. As used herein, the terms encompass amino acid chains of any length, including full length proteins (*i.e.*, antigens), wherein the amino acid residues are linked by covalent peptide bonds.

[110] The term "amino acid" refers to naturally occurring and non-naturally occurring amino acids, as well as amino acid analogs and amino acid mimetics that function in a manner similar to the naturally occurring amino acids. Naturally encoded amino acids are the 20 common amino acids (alanine, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, glutamine, glutamic acid, glycine, histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, 20 phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, and valine) and pyrrolysine and selenocysteine. Amino acid analogs refers to compounds that have the same basic chemical structure as a naturally occurring amino acid, *i.e.*, an α carbon that is bound to a hydrogen, a carboxyl group, an amino group, and an R group, such as, homoserine, norleucine, 25 methionine sulfoxide, methionine methyl sulfonium. Such analogs have modified R groups (such as, norleucine) or modified peptide backbones, but retain the same basic chemical structure as a naturally occurring amino acid.

[111] Amino acids may be referred to herein by either their commonly known three letter symbols or by the one-letter symbols recommended by the IUPAC-IUB Biochemical Nomenclature Commission. Nucleotides, likewise, may be referred to by their commonly 30 accepted single-letter codes.

[112] "Conservatively modified variants" applies to both amino acid and nucleic acid sequences. With respect to particular nucleic acid sequences, "conservatively modified variants" refers to those nucleic acids which encode identical or essentially identical amino

acid sequences, or where the nucleic acid does not encode an amino acid sequence, to essentially identical sequences. Because of the degeneracy of the genetic code, a large number of functionally identical nucleic acids encode any given protein. For instance, the codons GCA, GCC, GCG and GCU all encode the amino acid alanine. Thus, at every position where an alanine is specified by a codon, the codon can be altered to any of the corresponding codons described without altering the encoded polypeptide. Such nucleic acid variations are "silent variations," which are one species of conservatively modified variations. Every nucleic acid sequence herein which encodes a polypeptide also describes every possible silent variation of the nucleic acid. One of skill will recognize that each codon in a nucleic acid (except AUG, which is ordinarily the only codon for methionine, and TGG, which is ordinarily the only codon for tryptophan) can be modified to yield a functionally identical molecule. Accordingly, each silent variation of a nucleic acid which encodes a polypeptide is implicit in each described sequence.

[113] As to amino acid sequences, one of skill will recognize that individual substitutions, deletions or additions to a nucleic acid, peptide, polypeptide, or protein sequence which alters, adds or deletes a single amino acid or a small percentage of amino acids in the encoded sequence is a "conservatively modified variant" where the alteration results in the substitution of an amino acid with a chemically similar amino acid. Conservative substitution tables providing functionally similar amino acids are well known in the art. Such conservatively modified variants are in addition to and do not exclude polymorphic variants, interspecies homologs, and alleles of the invention.

[114] The following eight groups each contain amino acids that are conservative substitutions for one another:

- 1) Alanine (A), Glycine (G);
- 25 2) Aspartic acid (D), Glutamic acid (E);
- 3) Asparagine (N), Glutamine (Q);
- 4) Arginine (R), Lysine (K);
- 5) Isoleucine (I), Leucine (L), Methionine (M), Valine (V);
- 6) Phenylalanine (F), Tyrosine (Y), Tryptophan (W);
- 30 7) Serine (S), Threonine (T); and
- 8) Cysteine (C), Methionine (M)

(see, e.g., Creighton, *Proteins: Structures and Molecular Properties* (W H Freeman & Co.; 2nd edition (December 1993))

[115] The terms "identical" or percent "identity," in the context of two or more nucleic acids or polypeptide sequences, refer to two or more sequences or subsequences that are the same. Sequences are "substantially identical" if they have a percentage of amino acid residues or nucleotides that are the same (*i.e.*, about 60% identity, optionally about 65%,
 5 about 70%, about 75%, about 80%, about 85%, about 90%, or about 95% identity over a specified region), when compared and aligned for maximum correspondence over a comparison window, or designated region as measured using one of the following sequence comparison algorithms or by manual alignment and visual inspection. This definition also refers to the complement of a test sequence. The identity can exist over a region that is at
 10 least about 50 amino acids or nucleotides in length, or over a region that is 75-100 amino acids or nucleotides in length, or, where not specified, across the entire sequence or a polynucleotide or polypeptide.

[116] For sequence comparison, typically one sequence acts as a reference sequence, to which test sequences are compared. When using a sequence comparison algorithm, test
 15 and reference sequences are entered into a computer, subsequence coordinates are designated, if necessary, and sequence algorithm program parameters are designated. Default program parameters can be used, or alternative parameters can be designated. The sequence comparison algorithm then calculates the percent sequence identities for the test sequences relative to the reference sequence, based on the program parameters.

20 [117] A "comparison window", as used herein, includes reference to a segment of any one of the number of contiguous positions selected from the group consisting of from 20 to 600, usually about 50 to about 200, more usually about 100 to about 150 in which a sequence may be compared to a reference sequence of the same number of contiguous positions after the two sequences are optimally aligned. Methods of alignment of sequences
 25 for comparison are well-known in the art. Optimal alignment of sequences for comparison can be conducted, including but not limited to, by the local homology algorithm of Smith and Waterman (1970) *Adv. Appl. Math.* 2:482c, by the homology alignment algorithm of Needleman and Wunsch (1970) *J. Mol. Biol.* 48:443, by the search for similarity method of Pearson and Lipman (1988) *Proc. Nat'l. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:2444, by computerized
 30 implementations of these algorithms (GAP, BESTFIT, FASTA, and TFASTA in the Wisconsin Genetics Software Package, Genetics Computer Group, 575 Science Dr., Madison, WI), or by manual alignment and visual inspection (*see, e.g., Ausubel et al., Current Protocols in Molecular Biology* (1995 supplement)).

[118] One example of an algorithm that is suitable for determining percent sequence identity and sequence similarity are the BLAST and BLAST 2.0 algorithms, which are described in Altschul *et al.* (1977) *Nuc. Acids Res.* 25:3389-3402, and Altschul *et al.* (1990) *J. Mol. Biol.* 215:403-410, respectively. Software for performing BLAST analyses is publicly available through the National Center for Biotechnology Information. The BLAST algorithm parameters W, T, and X determine the sensitivity and speed of the alignment. The BLASTN program (for nucleotide sequences) uses as defaults a wordlength (W) of 11, an expectation (E) of 10, M=5, N=-4 and a comparison of both strands. For amino acid sequences, the BLASTP program uses as defaults a wordlength of 3, and expectation (E) of 10, and the BLOSUM62 scoring matrix (see Henikoff and Henikoff (1989) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89:10915) alignments (B) of 50, expectation (E) of 10, M=5, N=-4, and a comparison of both strands. The BLAST algorithm is typically performed with the "low complexity" filter turned off.

[119] The BLAST algorithm also performs a statistical analysis of the similarity between two sequences (see, e.g., Karlin and Altschul (1993) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90:5873-5787). One measure of similarity provided by the BLAST algorithm is the smallest sum probability (P(N)), which provides an indication of the probability by which a match between two nucleotide or amino acid sequences would occur by chance. For example, a nucleic acid is considered similar to a reference sequence if the smallest sum probability in a comparison of the test nucleic acid to the reference nucleic acid is less than about 0.2, more preferably less than about 0.01, and most preferably less than about 0.001.

[120] The phrase "selectively (or specifically) hybridizes to" refers to the binding, duplexing, or hybridizing of a molecule only to a particular nucleotide sequence under stringent hybridization conditions when that sequence is present in a complex mixture (including but not limited to, total cellular or library DNA or RNA).

[121] The phrase "stringent hybridization conditions" refers to conditions of low ionic strength and high temperature as is known in the art. Typically, under stringent conditions a probe will hybridize to its target subsequence in a complex mixture of nucleic acid (including but not limited to, total cellular or library DNA or RNA) but does not hybridize to other sequences in the complex mixture. Stringent conditions are sequence-dependent and will be different in different circumstances. Longer sequences hybridize specifically at higher temperatures. An extensive guide to the hybridization of nucleic acids is found in Tijssen, *Techniques in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology--Hybridization with Nucleic Probes*, "Overview of principles of hybridization and the strategy of nucleic acid

assays" (1993). Generally, stringent conditions are selected to be about 5-10° C lower than the thermal melting point (T_m) for the specific sequence at a defined ionic strength pH. The T_m is the temperature (under defined ionic strength, pH, and nucleic concentration) at which 50% of the probes complementary to the target hybridize to the target sequence at equilibrium (as the target sequences are present in excess, at T_m , 50% of the probes are occupied at equilibrium). Stringent conditions may be those in which the salt concentration is less than about 1.0 M sodium ion, typically about 0.01 to 1.0 M sodium ion concentration (or other salts) at pH 7.0 to 8.3 and the temperature is at least about 30°C for short probes (including but not limited to, 10 to 50 nucleotides) and at least about 60° C for long probes (including but not limited to, greater than 50 nucleotides). Stringent conditions may also be achieved with the addition of destabilizing agents such as formamide. For selective or specific hybridization, a positive signal may be at least two times background, optionally 10 times background hybridization. Exemplary stringent hybridization conditions can be as following: 50% formamide, 5X SSC, and 1% SDS, incubating at 42°C, or 5X SSC, 1% SDS, incubating at 65°C, with wash in 0.2X SSC, and 0.1% SDS at 65°C. Such washes can be performed for 5, 15, 30, 60, 120, or more minutes.

[122] As used herein, the term "eukaryote" refers to organisms belonging to the phylogenetic domain Eucarya such as animals (including but not limited to, mammals, insects, reptiles, birds, etc.), ciliates, plants (including but not limited to, monocots, dicots, algae, etc.), fungi, yeasts, flagellates, microsporidia, protists, etc.

[123] As used herein, the term "non-eukaryote" refers to non-eukaryotic organisms. For example, a non-eukaryotic organism can belong to the Eubacteria (including but not limited to, *Escherichia coli*, *Thermus thermophilus*, *Bacillus stearothermophilus*, etc.) phylogenetic domain, or the Archaea (including but not limited to, *Methanococcus jannaschii*, *Methanobacterium thermoautotrophicum*, *Halobacterium* such as *Haloferax volcanii* and *Halobacterium* species NRC-1, *Archaeoglobus fulgidus*, *Pyrococcus furiosus*, *Pyrococcus horikoshii*, *Aeuropyrum pernix*, etc.) phylogenetic domain.

[124] The term "subject" as used herein, refers to an animal, preferably a mammal, most preferably a human, who is the object of treatment, observation or experiment.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

I. Introduction

[125] IFN molecules comprising at least one unnatural amino acid are provided in the invention. In certain embodiments of the invention, IFN with at least one unnatural amino acid includes at least one post-translational modification. In one embodiment, the at least one post-translational modification comprises attachment of a molecule (including but not limited to, a dye, a polymer, including but not limited to a derivative of polyethylene glycol, a photocrosslinker, a cytotoxic compound, a drug, an affinity label, a derivative of biotin, a resin, a second protein or polypeptide, an antibody or antibody fragment, a metal chelator, a cofactor, a fatty acid, a carbohydrate, a polynucleotide (including but not limited to, DNA, RNA), etc.) comprising a second reactive group to the at least one unnatural amino acid comprising a first reactive group utilizing chemistry methodology that is known to one of ordinary skill in the art to be suitable for the particular reactive groups. For example, the first reactive group is an alkynyl moiety (including but not limited to, in the unnatural amino acid *p*-propargyloxyphenylalanine, where the propargyl group is also sometimes refer to as an acetylene moiety) and the second reactive group is an azido moiety, and [3+2] cycloaddition chemistry methodologies are utilized. In another example, the first reactive group is the azido moiety (including but not limited to, in the unnatural amino acid *p*-azido-L-phenylalanine) and the second reactive group is the alkynyl moiety. In certain embodiments of the modified IFN of the present invention, at least one unnatural amino acid (including but not limited to, unnatural amino acid containing a keto functional group) comprising at least one post-translational modification, is used where the at least one post-translational modification comprises a saccharide moiety. In certain embodiments, the post-translational modification is made in vivo in a eukaryotic cell or in a non-eukaryotic cell.

[126] In certain embodiments, the protein includes at least one post-translational modification that is made in vivo by one host cell, where the post-translational modification is not normally made by another host cell type. In certain embodiments, the protein includes at least one post-translational modification that is made in vivo by a eukaryotic cell, where the post-translational modification is not normally made by a non-eukaryotic cell. Examples of post-translational modifications include, but are not limited to, acetylation, acylation, lipid-modification, palmitoylation, palmitate addition, phosphorylation, glycolipid-linkage modification, and the like. In one embodiment, the post-translational modification comprises

attachment of an oligosaccharide to an asparagine by a GlcNAc-asparagine linkage (including but not limited to, where the oligosaccharide comprises (GlcNAc-Man)₂-Man-GlcNAc-GlcNAc, and the like). In another embodiment, the post-translational modification comprises attachment of an oligosaccharide (including but not limited to, Gal-GalNAc, Gal-GlcNAc, etc.) to a serine or threonine by a GalNAc-serine, a GalNAc-threonine, a GlcNAc-serine, or a GlcNAc-threonine linkage. In certain embodiments, a protein or polypeptide of the invention can comprise a secretion or localization sequence, an epitope tag, a FLAG tag, a polyhistidine tag, a GST fusion, and/or the like.

[127] The protein or polypeptide of interest can contain at least one, at least two, at least three, at least four, at least five, at least six, at least seven, at least eight, at least nine, or ten or more unnatural amino acids. The unnatural amino acids can be the same or different, for example, there can be 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 or more different sites in the protein that comprise 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 or more different unnatural amino acids. In certain embodiments, at least one, but fewer than all, of a particular amino acid present in a naturally occurring version of the protein is substituted with an unnatural amino acid.

[128] The present invention provides methods and compositions based on members of the GH supergene family, in particular hIFN, comprising at least one non-naturally encoded amino acid. Introduction of at least one non-naturally encoded amino acid into a GH supergene family member such as hIFN can allow for the application of conjugation chemistries that involve specific chemical reactions, including, but not limited to, with one or more non-naturally encoded amino acids while not reacting with the commonly occurring 20 amino acids. In some embodiments, the GH supergene family member such as hIFN comprising the non-naturally encoded amino acid is linked to a water soluble polymer, such as polyethylene glycol (PEG), via the side chain of the non-naturally encoded amino acid. This invention provides a highly efficient method for the selective modification of proteins with PEG derivatives, which involves the selective incorporation of non-genetically encoded amino acids, including but not limited to, those amino acids containing functional groups or substituents not found in the 20 naturally incorporated amino acids, including but not limited to an azide or acetylene moiety, into proteins in response to a selector codon and the subsequent modification of those amino acids with a suitably reactive PEG derivative. Once incorporated, the amino acid side chains can then be modified by utilizing chemistry methodologies known to those of ordinary skill in the art to be suitable for the particular functional groups or substituents present in the naturally encoded amino acid. Known

chemistry methodologies of a wide variety are suitable for use in the present invention to incorporate a water soluble polymer into the protein. Such methodologies include but are not limited to a Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition reaction (*see, e.g.*, Padwa, A. in Comprehensive Organic Synthesis, Vol. 4, (1991) Ed. Trost, B. M., Pergamon, Oxford, p. 1069-1109; and, Huisgen, R. in 1,3-Dipolar Cycloaddition Chemistry, (1984) Ed. Padwa, A., Wiley, New York, p. 1-176) with, including but not limited to, acetylene or azide derivatives, respectively.

[129] Because the Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition method involves a cycloaddition rather than a nucleophilic substitution reaction, proteins can be modified with extremely high selectivity. The reaction can be carried out at room temperature in aqueous conditions with excellent regioselectivity (1,4 > 1,5) by the addition of catalytic amounts of Cu(I) salts to the reaction mixture. *See, e.g.*, Tornøe, et al., (2002) Org. Chem. 67:3057-3064; and, Rostovtsev, et al., (2002) Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 41:2596-2599; and WO 03/101972. A molecule that can be added to a protein of the invention through a [3+2] cycloaddition includes virtually any molecule with a suitable functional group or substituent including but not limited to an azido or acetylene derivative. These molecules can be added to an unnatural amino acid with an acetylene group, including but not limited to, p-propargyloxyphenylalanine, or azido group, including but not limited to p-azido-phenylalanine, respectively.

[130] The five-membered ring that results from the Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition is not generally reversible in reducing environments and is stable against hydrolysis for extended periods in aqueous environments. Consequently, the physical and chemical characteristics of a wide variety of substances can be modified under demanding aqueous conditions with the active PEG derivatives of the present invention. Even more important, because the azide and acetylene moieties are specific for one another (and do not, for example, react with any of the 20 common, genetically-encoded amino acids), proteins can be modified in one or more specific sites with extremely high selectivity.

[131] The invention also provides water soluble and hydrolytically stable derivatives of PEG derivatives and related hydrophilic polymers having one or more acetylene or azide moieties. The PEG polymer derivatives that contain acetylene moieties are highly selective for coupling with azide moieties that have been introduced selectively into proteins in response to a selector codon. Similarly, PEG polymer derivatives that contain azide moieties are highly selective for coupling with acetylene moieties that have been introduced selectively into proteins in response to a selector codon.

[132] More specifically, the azide moieties comprise, but are not limited to, alkyl azides, aryl azides and derivatives of these azides. The derivatives of the alkyl and aryl azides can include other substituents so long as the acetylene-specific reactivity is maintained. The acetylene moieties comprise alkyl and aryl acetylenes and derivatives of each. The derivatives of the alkyl and aryl acetylenes can include other substituents so long as the azide-specific reactivity is maintained.

[133] The present invention provides conjugates of substances having a wide variety of functional groups, substituents or moieties, with other substances including but not limited to water soluble polymers such as PEG, proteins, drugs, small molecules, biomaterials, or any other desirable compound or substance. The present invention also includes conjugates of substances having azide or acetylene moieties with PEG polymer derivatives having the corresponding acetylene or azide moieties. For example, a PEG polymer containing an azide moiety can be coupled to a biologically active molecule at a position in the protein that contains a non-genetically encoded amino acid bearing an acetylene functionality. The linkage by which the PEG and the biologically active molecule are coupled includes but is not limited to the Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition product.

[134] It is well established in the art that PEG can be used to modify the surfaces of biomaterials (see, e.g., U.S. Patent 6,610,281; Mehvar, R., J.Pharmaceut. Sci., 3(1):125-136 (2000) which are incorporated by reference herein). The invention also includes biomaterials comprising a surface having one or more reactive azide or acetylene sites and one or more of the azide- or acetylene-containing polymers of the invention coupled to the surface via the Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition linkage. Biomaterials and other substances can also be coupled to the azide- or acetylene-activated polymer derivatives through a linkage other than the azide or acetylene linkage, such as through a linkage comprising a carboxylic acid, amine, alcohol or thiol moiety, to leave the azide or acetylene moiety available for subsequent reactions.

[135] The invention includes a method of synthesizing the azide- and acetylene containing polymers of the invention. In the case of the azide-containing PEG derivative, the azide can be bonded directly to a carbon atom of the polymer. Alternatively, the azide-containing PEG derivative can be prepared by attaching a linking agent that has the azide moiety at one terminus to a conventional activated polymer so that the resulting polymer has the azide moiety at its terminus. In the case of the acetylene-containing PEG derivative, the acetylene can be bonded directly to a carbon atom of the polymer. Alternatively, the acetylene-containing PEG derivative can be prepared by attaching a linking agent that has the

acetylene moiety at one terminus to a conventional activated polymer so that the resulting polymer has the acetylene moiety at its terminus.

[136] More specifically, in the case of the azide-containing PEG derivative, a water soluble polymer having at least one active hydroxyl moiety undergoes a reaction to produce a substituted polymer having a more reactive moiety, such as a mesylate, tresylate, tosylate or halogen leaving group, thereon. The preparation and use of PEG derivatives containing sulfonyl acid halides, halogen atoms and other leaving groups are well known to the skilled artisan. The resulting substituted polymer then undergoes a reaction to substitute for the more reactive moiety an azide moiety at the terminus of the polymer. Alternatively, a water soluble polymer having at least one active nucleophilic or electrophilic moiety undergoes a reaction with a linking agent that has an azide at one terminus so that a covalent bond is formed between the PEG polymer and the linking agent and the azide moiety is positioned at the terminus of the polymer. Nucleophilic and electrophilic moieties, including amines, thiols, hydrazides, hydrazines, alcohols, carboxylates, aldehydes, ketones, thioesters and the like, are well known to the skilled artisan.

[137] More specifically, in the case of the acetylene-containing PEG derivative, a water soluble polymer having at least one active hydroxyl moiety undergoes a reaction to displace a halogen or other activated leaving group from a precursor that contains an acetylene moiety. Alternatively, a water soluble polymer having at least one active nucleophilic or electrophilic moiety undergoes a reaction with a linking agent that has an acetylene at one terminus so that a covalent bond is formed between the PEG polymer and the linking agent and the acetylene moiety is positioned at the terminus of the polymer. The use of halogen moieties, activated leaving group, nucleophilic and electrophilic moieties in the context of organic synthesis and the preparation and use of PEG derivatives is well established to practitioners in the art.

[138] The invention also provides a method for the selective modification of proteins to add other substances to the modified protein, including but not limited to water soluble polymers such as PEG and PEG derivatives containing an azide or acetylene moiety. The azide- and acetylene-containing PEG derivatives can be used to modify the properties of surfaces and molecules where biocompatibility, stability, solubility and lack of immunogenicity are important, while at the same time providing a more selective means of attaching the PEG derivatives to proteins than was previously known in the art.

II. Growth Hormone Supergene Family

- [139] The following proteins include those encoded by genes of the growth hormone (GH) supergene family (Bazan, F., *Immunology Today* 11: 350-354 (1991); Bazan, J. F. *Science* 257: 410-411 (1992); Mott, H. R. and Campbell, I. D., *Current Opinion in Structural Biology* 5: 114-121 (1995); Silvennoinen, O. and Ihle, J. N., SIGNALLING BY THE HEMATOPOIETIC CYTOKINE RECEPTORS (1996)): growth hormone, prolactin, placental lactogen, erythropoietin (EPO), thrombopoietin (TPO), interleukin-2 (IL-2), IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12 (p35 subunit), IL-13, IL-15, oncostatin M, ciliary neurotrophic factor, leukemia inhibitory factor, alpha interferon, beta interferon, gamma interferon, omega interferon, tau interferon, granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (G-CSF), granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), macrophage colony stimulating factor (M-CSF) and cardiotrophin-1 (CT-1) ("the GH supergene family"). It is anticipated that additional members of this gene family will be identified in the future through gene cloning and sequencing. Members of the GH supergene family have similar secondary and tertiary structures, despite the fact that they generally have limited amino acid or DNA sequence identity. The shared structural features allow new members of the gene family to be readily identified. Given the extent of structural homology among the members of the GH supergene family, non-naturally encoded amino acids may be incorporated into any members of the GH supergene family using the present invention.
- [140] Structures of a number of cytokines, including IFN (Zink et al., *FEBS Lett.* 314:435 (1992); Zink et al., *Biochemistry* 33:8453 (1994); Hill et al., *Proc.Natl.Acad.Sci.USA* 90:5167 (1993)), GM-CSF (Diederichs, K., et al. *Science* 154: 1779-1782 (1991); Walter et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 224:1075-1085 (1992)), IL-2 (Bazan, J. F. *Science* 257: 410-411 (1992); McKay, D. B. *Science* 257: 412 (1992)), IL-4 (Redfield et al., *Biochemistry* 30: 11029-11035 (1991); Powers et al., *Science* 256:1673-1677 (1992)), and IL-5 (Milburn et al., *Nature* 363: 172-176 (1993)) have been determined by X-ray diffraction and NMR studies and show striking conservation with the GH structure, despite a lack of significant primary sequence homology. IFN is considered to be a member of this family based upon modeling and other studies (Lee et al., *J. Interferon Cytokine Res.* 15:341 (1995); Murgolo et al., *Proteins* 17:62 (1993); Radhakrishnan et al., *Structure* 4:1453 (1996); Klavs et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 274:661 (1997)). A large number of additional cytokines and growth factors including ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF), leukemia inhibitory factor (LIF), thrombopoietin (TPO), oncostatin M, macrophage colony stimulating factor (M-CSF), IL-3, IL-6, IL-7, IL-9, IL-12, IL-13, IL-15, and granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (G-CSF), as well as the IFN's such as alpha, beta, omega, tau, epsilon, and gamma interferon belong to

this family (reviewed in Mott and Campbell, *Current Opinion in Structural Biology* 5: 114-121 (1995); Silvennoinen and Ihle (1996) SIGNALLING BY THE HEMATOPOIETIC CYTOKINE RECEPTORS). All of the above cytokines and growth factors are now considered to comprise one large gene family.

5 [141] In addition to sharing similar secondary and tertiary structures, members of this family share the property that they must oligomerize cell surface receptors to activate intracellular signaling pathways. Some GH family members, including but not limited to; GH and EPO, bind a single type of receptor and cause it to form homodimers. Other family members, including but not limited to, IL-2, IL4, and IL-6, bind more than one type of
10 receptor and cause the receptors to form heterodimers or higher order aggregates (Davis et al., (1993) *Science* 260: 1805-1808; Paonessa et al., 1995) *EMBO J.* 14: 1942-1951; Mott and Campbell, *Current Opinion in Structural Biology* 5: 114-121 (1995)). Mutagenesis studies have shown that, like GH, these other cytokines and growth factors contain multiple receptor binding sites, typically two, and bind their cognate receptors sequentially (Mott and
15 Campbell, *Current Opinion in Structural Biology* 5: 114-121 (1995); Matthews et al., (1996) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93: 9471-9476). Like GH, the primary receptor binding sites for these other family members occur primarily in the four alpha helices and the A-B loop. The specific amino acids in the helical bundles that participate in receptor binding differ amongst the family members. Most of the cell surface receptors that interact with members of the GH
20 supergene family are structurally related and comprise a second large multi-gene family. See, e.g. U.S. Patent No. 6,608,183.

[142] A general conclusion reached from mutational studies of various members of the GH supergene family is that the loops joining the alpha helices generally tend to not be involved in receptor binding. In particular the short B-C loop appears to be non-essential for
25 receptor binding in most, if not all, family members. For this reason, the B-C loop may be substituted with non-naturally encoded amino acids as described herein in members of the GH supergene family. The A-B loop, the C-D loop (and D-E loop of interferon/ IL-10-like members of the GH superfamily) may also be substituted with a non-naturally-occurring amino acid. Amino acids proximal to helix A and distal to the final helix also tend not to be
30 involved in receptor binding and also may be sites for introducing non-naturally-occurring amino acids. In some embodiments, a non-naturally encoded amino acid is substituted at any position within a loop structure including but not limited to the first 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, or more amino acids of the A-B, B-C, C-D or D-E loop. In some embodiments, a non-naturally

AMBX-0019.00US

encoded amino acid is substituted within the last 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, or more amino acids of the A-B, B-C, C-D or D-E loop.

[143] Certain members of the GH family, including but not limited to, EPO, IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-6, IFN, GM-CSF, TPO, IL-10, IL-12 p35, IL-13, IL-15 and interferon contain N-linked and/or O-linked sugars. The glycosylation sites in the proteins occur almost exclusively in the loop regions and not in the alpha helical bundles. Because the loop regions generally are not involved in receptor binding and because they are sites for the covalent attachment of sugar groups, they may be useful sites for introducing non-naturally-occurring amino acid substitutions into the proteins. Amino acids that comprise the N- and O-linked glycosylation sites in the proteins may be sites for non-naturally-occurring amino acid substitutions because these amino acids are surface-exposed. Therefore, the natural protein can tolerate bulky sugar groups attached to the proteins at these sites and the glycosylation sites tend to be located away from the receptor binding sites.

[144] Additional members of the GH gene family are likely to be discovered in the future. New members of the GH supergene family can be identified through computer-aided secondary and tertiary structure analyses of the predicted protein sequences. Members of the GH supergene family typically possess four or five amphipathic helices joined by non-helical amino acids (the loop regions). The proteins may contain a hydrophobic signal sequence at their N-terminus to promote secretion from the cell. Such later discovered members of the GH supergen family also are included within this invention.

[145] Reference to hIFN polypeptides in this application is intended to use hIFN as an example of a member of the GH supergene family. Thus, it is understood that the modifications and chemistries described herein with reference to hIFN can be equally applied to any other members of the GH supergene family, including those specifically listed herein.

25 **III. General Recombinant Nucleic Acid Methods For Use With The Invention**

[146] In numerous embodiments of the present invention, nucleic acids encoding a hIFN of interest will be isolated, cloned and often altered using recombinant methods. Such embodiments are used, including but not limited to, for protein expression or during the generation of variants, derivatives, expression cassettes, or other sequences derived from a hIFN polypeptide. In some embodiments, the sequences encoding the polypeptides of the invention are operably linked to a heterologous promoter. Isolation of hIFN and production of IFN in host cells is described in, e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 6,489,144; 6,410,697; 6,159,712;

AMBX-0019.00US

5,955,307; 5,814,485; 5,710,027; 5,595,888; 5,391,713; 5,244,655; 5,196,323; 5,066,786; 4,966,843; 4,894,330; 4,364,863, which are incorporated by reference herein.

[147] A nucleotide sequence encoding a hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid may be synthesized on the basis of the amino acid sequence of the parent polypeptide, including but not limited to, having the amino acid sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 2, and then changing the nucleotide sequence so as to effect introduction (i.e., incorporation or substitution) or removal (i.e., deletion or substitution) of the relevant amino acid residue(s). The nucleotide sequence may be conveniently modified by site-directed mutagenesis in accordance with conventional methods. Alternatively, the nucleotide sequence may be prepared by chemical synthesis, including but not limited to, by using an oligonucleotide synthesizer, wherein oligonucleotides are designed based on the amino acid sequence of the desired polypeptide, and preferably selecting those codons that are favored in the host cell in which the recombinant polypeptide will be produced. For example, several small oligonucleotides coding for portions of the desired polypeptide may be synthesized and assembled by PCR, ligation or ligation chain reaction. See, e.g., Barany, *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* 88: 189-193 (1991); U.S. 6,521,427 which are incorporated by reference herein.

[148] This invention utilizes routine techniques in the field of recombinant genetics. Basic texts disclosing the general methods of use in this invention include Sambrook *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual* (3rd ed. 2001); Kriegler, *Gene Transfer and Expression: A Laboratory Manual* (1990); and *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology* (Ausubel *et al.*, eds., 1994)).

[149] General texts which describe molecular biological techniques include Berger and Kimmel, Guide to Molecular Cloning Techniques, Methods in Enzymology volume 152 Academic Press, Inc., San Diego, CA (Berger); Sambrook *et al.*, Molecular Cloning - A Laboratory Manual (2nd Ed.), Vol. 1-3, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, 1989 ("Sambrook") and Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, F.M. Ausubel *et al.*, eds., Current Protocols, a joint venture between Greene Publishing Associates, Inc. and John Wiley & Sons, Inc., (supplemented through 1999) ("Ausubel"). These texts describe mutagenesis, the use of vectors, promoters and many other relevant topics related to, including but not limited to, the generation of genes that include selector codons for production of proteins that include unnatural amino acids, orthogonal tRNAs, orthogonal synthetases, and pairs thereof.

[150] Various types of mutagenesis are used in the invention for a variety of purposes, including but not limited to, to produce libraries of tRNAs, to produce libraries of synthetases, to produce selector codons, to insert selector codons that encode unnatural amino acids in a protein or polypeptide of interest. They include but are not limited to site-directed, random point mutagenesis, homologous recombination, DNA shuffling or other recursive mutagenesis methods, chimeric construction, mutagenesis using uracil containing templates, oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis, phosphorothioate-modified DNA mutagenesis, mutagenesis using gapped duplex DNA or the like, or any combination thereof. Additional suitable methods include point mismatch repair, mutagenesis using repair-deficient host strains, restriction-selection and restriction-purification, deletion mutagenesis, mutagenesis by total gene synthesis, double-strand break repair, and the like. Mutagenesis, including but not limited to, involving chimeric constructs, are also included in the present invention. In one embodiment, mutagenesis can be guided by known information of the naturally occurring molecule or altered or mutated naturally occurring molecule, including but not limited to, sequence, sequence comparisons, physical properties, crystal structure or the like.

[151] The texts and examples found herein describe these procedures. Additional information is found in the following publications and references cited within: Ling et al., *Approaches to DNA mutagenesis: an overview*, Anal Biochem. 254(2): 157-178 (1997); Dale et al., *Oligonucleotide-directed random mutagenesis using the phosphorothioate method*, Methods Mol. Biol. 57:369-374 (1996); Smith, *In vitro mutagenesis*, Ann. Rev. Genet. 19:423-462(1985); Botstein & Shortle, *Strategies and applications of in vitro mutagenesis*, Science 229:1193-1201(1985); Carter, *Site-directed mutagenesis*, Biochem. J. 237:1-7 (1986); Kunkel, *The efficiency of oligonucleotide directed mutagenesis*, in Nucleic Acids & Molecular Biology (Eckstein, F. and Lilley, D.M.J. eds., Springer Verlag, Berlin)) (1987); Kunkel, *Rapid and efficient site-specific mutagenesis without phenotypic selection*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82:488-492 (1985); Kunkel et al., *Rapid and efficient site-specific mutagenesis without phenotypic selection*, Methods in Enzymol. 154, 367-382 (1987); Bass et al., *Mutant Trp repressors with new DNA-binding specificities*, Science 242:240-245 (1988); Methods in Enzymol. 100: 468-500 (1983); Methods in Enzymol. 154: 329-350 (1987); Zoller & Smith, *Oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis using M13-derived vectors: an efficient and general procedure for the production of point mutations in any DNA fragment*, Nucleic Acids Res. 10:6487-6500 (1982); Zoller & Smith, *Oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis of DNA fragments cloned into M13 vectors*, Methods in Enzymol. 100:468-500

- (1983); Zoller & Smith, *Oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis: a simple method using two oligonucleotide primers and a single-stranded DNA template*, Methods in Enzymol. 154:329-350 (1987); Taylor et al., *The use of phosphorothioate-modified DNA in restriction enzyme reactions to prepare nicked DNA*, Nucl. Acids Res. 13: 8749-8764 (1985); Taylor et al., *The rapid generation of oligonucleotide-directed mutations at high frequency using phosphorothioate-modified DNA*, Nucl. Acids Res. 13: 8765-8787 (1985); Nakamaye & Eckstein, *Inhibition of restriction endonuclease Nci I cleavage by phosphorothioate groups and its application to oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis*, Nucl. Acids Res. 14: 9679-9698 (1986); Sayers et al., *Y-T Exonucleases in phosphorothioate-based oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis*, Nucl. Acids Res. 16:791-802 (1988); Sayers et al., *Strand specific cleavage of phosphorothioate-containing DNA by reaction with restriction endonucleases in the presence of ethidium bromide*, (1988) Nucl. Acids Res. 16: 803-814; Kramer et al., *The gapped duplex DNA approach to oligonucleotide-directed mutation construction*, Nucl. Acids Res. 12: 9441-9456 (1984); Kramer & Fritz *Oligonucleotide-directed construction of mutations via gapped duplex DNA*, Methods in Enzymol. 154:350-367 (1987); Kramer et al., *Improved enzymatic in vitro reactions in the gapped duplex DNA approach to oligonucleotide-directed construction of mutations*, Nucl. Acids Res. 16: 7207 (1988); Fritz et al., *Oligonucleotide-directed construction of mutations: a gapped duplex DNA procedure without enzymatic reactions in vitro*, Nucl. Acids Res. 16: 6987-6999 (1988); Kramer et al., *Point Mismatch Repair*, Cell 38:879-887 (1984); Carter et al., *Improved oligonucleotide site-directed mutagenesis using M13 vectors*, Nucl. Acids Res. 13: 4431-4443 (1985); Carter, *Improved oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis using M13 vectors*, Methods in Enzymol. 154: 382-403 (1987); Eghtedarzadeh & Henikoff, *Use of oligonucleotides to generate large deletions*, Nucl. Acids Res. 14: 5115 (1986); Wells et al., *Importance of hydrogen-bond formation in stabilizing the transition state of subtilisin*, Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. A 317: 415-423 (1986); Nambiar et al., *Total synthesis and cloning of a gene coding for the ribonuclease S protein*, Science 223: 1299-1301 (1984); Sakamar and Khorana, *Total synthesis and expression of a gene for the α -subunit of bovine rod outer segment guanine nucleotide-binding protein (transducin)*, Nucl. Acids Res. 14: 6361-6372 (1988); Wells et al., *Cassette mutagenesis: an efficient method for generation of multiple mutations at defined sites*, Gene 34:315-323 (1985); Grundström et al., *Oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis by microscale 'shot-gun' gene synthesis*, Nucl. Acids Res. 13: 3305-3316 (1985); Mandecki, *Oligonucleotide-directed double-strand break repair in plasmids of Escherichia coli: a method for site-specific mutagenesis*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 83:7177-7181 (1986); Arnold, *Protein engineering*

for unusual environments, Current Opinion in Biotechnology 4:450-455 (1993); Sieber, et al., Nature Biotechnology, 19:456-460 (2001). W. P. C. Stemmer, Nature 370, 389-91 (1994); and, I. A. Lorimer, I. Pastan, Nucleic Acids Res. 23, 3067-8 (1995). Additional details on many of the above methods can be found in Methods in Enzymology Volume 154, which
 5 also describes useful controls for trouble-shooting problems with various mutagenesis methods.

[152] The invention also relates to eukaryotic host cells, non-eukaryotic host cells, and organisms for the in vivo incorporation of an unnatural amino acid via orthogonal tRNA/RS pairs. Host cells are genetically engineered (including but not limited to,
 10 transformed, transduced or transfected) with the polynucleotides of the invention or constructs which include a polynucleotide of the invention, including but not limited to, a vector of the invention, which can be, for example, a cloning vector or an expression vector. The vector can be, for example, in the form of a plasmid, a bacterium, a virus, a naked polynucleotide, or a conjugated polynucleotide. The vectors are introduced into cells and/or
 15 microorganisms by standard methods including electroporation (From et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82, 5824 (1985), infection by viral vectors, high velocity ballistic penetration by small particles with the nucleic acid either within the matrix of small beads or particles, or on the surface (Klein et al., Nature 327, 70-73 (1987)).

[153] The engineered host cells can be cultured in conventional nutrient media
 20 modified as appropriate for such activities as, for example, screening steps, activating promoters or selecting transformants. These cells can optionally be cultured into transgenic organisms. Other useful references, including but not limited to for cell isolation and culture (e.g., for subsequent nucleic acid isolation) include Freshney (1994) Culture of Animal Cells, a Manual of Basic Technique, third edition, Wiley- Liss, New York and the references cited
 25 therein; Payne *et al.* (1992) Plant Cell and Tissue Culture in Liquid Systems John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York, NY; Gamborg and Phillips (eds) (1995) Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture; Fundamental Methods Springer Lab Manual, Springer-Verlag (Berlin Heidelberg New York) and Atlas and Parks (eds) The Handbook of Microbiological Media (1993) CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.

30 [154] Several well-known methods of introducing target nucleic acids into cells are available, any of which can be used in the invention. These include: fusion of the recipient cells with bacterial protoplasts containing the DNA, electroporation, projectile bombardment, and infection with viral vectors (discussed further, below), etc. Bacterial cells can be used to

amplify the number of plasmids containing DNA constructs of this invention. The bacteria are grown to log phase and the plasmids within the bacteria can be isolated by a variety of methods known in the art (*see*, for instance, Sambrook). In addition, a plethora of kits are commercially available for the purification of plasmids from bacteria, (*see*, e.g., EasyPrep™, FlexiPrep™, both from Pharmacia Biotech; StrataClean™, from Stratagene; and, QIAprep™ from Qiagen). The isolated and purified plasmids are then further manipulated to produce other plasmids, used to transfect cells or incorporated into related vectors to infect organisms. Typical vectors contain transcription and translation terminators, transcription and translation initiation sequences, and promoters useful for regulation of the expression of the particular target nucleic acid. The vectors optionally comprise generic expression cassettes containing at least one independent terminator sequence, sequences permitting replication of the cassette in eukaryotes, or prokaryotes, or both, (including but not limited to, shuttle vectors) and selection markers for both prokaryotic and eukaryotic systems. Vectors are suitable for replication and integration in prokaryotes, eukaryotes, or preferably both. *See*, Gilman & Smith, Gene 8:81 (1979); Roberts, *et al.*, Nature, 328:731 (1987); Schneider, B., *et al.*, Protein Expr. Purif. 6435:10 (1995); Ausubel, Sambrook, Berger (*all supra*). A catalogue of Bacteria and Bacteriophages useful for cloning is provided, e.g., by the ATCC, e.g., The ATCC Catalogue of Bacteria and Bacteriophage (1992) Gherna *et al.* (eds) published by the ATCC. Additional basic procedures for sequencing, cloning and other aspects of molecular biology and underlying theoretical considerations are also found in Watson *et al.* (1992) Recombinant DNA Second Edition Scientific American Books, NY. In addition, essentially any nucleic acid (and virtually any labeled nucleic acid, whether standard or non-standard) can be custom or standard ordered from any of a variety of commercial sources, such as the Midland Certified Reagent Company (Midland, TX mcr.com), The Great American Gene Company (Ramona, CA available on the World Wide Web at genco.com), ExpressGen Inc. (Chicago, IL available on the World Wide Web at expressgen.com), Operon Technologies Inc. (Alameda, CA) and many others.

SELECTOR CODONS

[155] Selector codons of the invention expand the genetic codon framework of protein biosynthetic machinery. For example, a selector codon includes, but is not limited to, a unique three base codon, a nonsense codon, such as a stop codon, including but not limited to, an amber codon (UAG), or an opal codon (UGA), an unnatural codon, a four or more base codon, a rare codon, or the like. It is readily apparent to those of ordinary skill in the art that

AMBX-0019.00US

there is a wide range in the number of selector codons that can be introduced into a desired gene, including but not limited to, one or more, two or more, more than three, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 or more in a single polynucleotide encoding at least a portion of hIFN.

[156] In one embodiment, the methods involve the use of a selector codon that is a stop codon for the incorporation of unnatural amino acids in vivo in a eukaryotic cell. For example, an O-tRNA is produced that recognizes the stop codon, including but not limited to, UAG, and is aminoacylated by an O-RS with a desired unnatural amino acid. This O-tRNA is not recognized by the naturally occurring host's aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases. Conventional site-directed mutagenesis can be used to introduce the stop codon, including but not limited to, TAG, at the site of interest in a polypeptide of interest. *See, e.g., Sayers, J.R., et al. (1988), 5',3' Exonuclease in phosphorothioate-based oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis. Nucleic Acids Res. 791-802.* When the O-RS, O-tRNA and the nucleic acid that encodes the polypeptide of interest are combined in vivo, the unnatural amino acid is incorporated in response to the UAG codon to give a polypeptide containing the unnatural amino acid at the specified position.

[157] The incorporation of unnatural amino acids in vivo can be done without significant perturbation of the eukaryotic host cell. For example, because the suppression efficiency for the UAG codon depends upon the competition between the O-tRNA, including but not limited to, the amber suppressor tRNA, and a eukaryotic release factor (including but not limited to, eRF) (which binds to a stop codon and initiates release of the growing peptide from the ribosome), the suppression efficiency can be modulated by, including but not limited to, increasing the expression level of O-tRNA, and/or the suppressor tRNA.

[158] Selector codons also comprise extended codons, including but not limited to, four or more base codons, such as, four, five, six or more base codons. Examples of four base codons include, including but not limited to, AGGA, CUAG, UAGA, CCCU and the like. Examples of five base codons include, but are not limited to, AGGAC, CCCCUC, CCCUC, CUAGA, CUACU, UAGGC and the like. A feature of the invention includes using extended codons based on frameshift suppression. Four or more base codons can insert, including but not limited to, one or multiple unnatural amino acids into the same protein. For example, in the presence of mutated O-tRNAs, including but not limited to, a special frameshift suppressor tRNAs, with anticodon loops, for example, with at least 8-10 nt anticodon loops, the four or more base codon is read as single amino acid. In other embodiments, the anticodon loops can decode, including but not limited to, at least a four-

base codon, at least a five-base codon, or at least a six-base codon or more. Since there are 256 possible four-base codons, multiple unnatural amino acids can be encoded in the same cell using a four or more base codon. See, Anderson et al., (2002) *Exploring the Limits of Codon and Anticodon Size*, Chemistry and Biology, 9:237-244; Magliery, (2001) *Expanding the Genetic Code: Selection of Efficient Suppressors of Four-base Codons and Identification of "Shifty" Four-base Codons with a Library Approach in Escherichia coli*, J. Mol. Biol. 307: 755-769.

[159] For example, four-base codons have been used to incorporate unnatural amino acids into proteins using in vitro biosynthetic methods. See, e.g., Ma et al., (1993) Biochemistry, 32:7939; and Hohsaka et al., (1999) J. Am. Chem. Soc., 121:34. CGGG and AGGU were used to simultaneously incorporate 2-naphthylalanine and an NBD derivative of lysine into streptavidin in vitro with two chemically acylated frameshift suppressor tRNAs. See, e.g., Hohsaka et al., (1999) J. Am. Chem. Soc., 121:12194. In an in vivo study, Moore et al. examined the ability of tRNA^{Leu} derivatives with NCUA anticodons to suppress UAGN codons (N can be U, A, G, or C), and found that the quadruplet UAGA can be decoded by a tRNA^{Leu} with a UCUA anticodon with an efficiency of 13 to 26% with little decoding in the 0 or -1 frame. See, Moore et al., (2000) J. Mol. Biol., 298:195. In one embodiment, extended codons based on rare codons or nonsense codons can be used in the present invention, which can reduce missense readthrough and frameshift suppression at other unwanted sites.

[160] For a given system, a selector codon can also include one of the natural three base codons, where the endogenous system does not use (or rarely uses) the natural base codon. For example, this includes a system that is lacking a tRNA that recognizes the natural three base codon, and/or a system where the three base codon is a rare codon.

[161] Selector codons optionally include unnatural base pairs. These unnatural base pairs further expand the existing genetic alphabet. One extra base pair increases the number of triplet codons from 64 to 125. Properties of third base pairs include stable and selective base pairing, efficient enzymatic incorporation into DNA with high fidelity by a polymerase, and the efficient continued primer extension after synthesis of the nascent unnatural base pair. Descriptions of unnatural base pairs which can be adapted for methods and compositions include, e.g., Hirao, et al., (2002) *An unnatural base pair for incorporating amino acid analogues into protein*, Nature Biotechnology, 20:177-182. Other relevant publications are listed below.

[162] For in vivo usage, the unnatural nucleoside is membrane permeable and is phosphorylated to form the corresponding triphosphate. In addition, the increased genetic information is stable and not destroyed by cellular enzymes. Previous efforts by Benner and others took advantage of hydrogen bonding patterns that are different from those in canonical Watson-Crick pairs, the most noteworthy example of which is the iso-C:iso-G pair. See, e.g., Switzer et al., (1989) J. Am. Chem. Soc., 111:8322; and Piccirilli et al., (1990) Nature, 343:33; Kool, (2000) Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol., 4:602. These bases in general mispair to some degree with natural bases and cannot be enzymatically replicated. Kool and co-workers demonstrated that hydrophobic packing interactions between bases can replace hydrogen bonding to drive the formation of base pair. See, Kool, (2000) Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol., 4:602; and Guckian and Kool, (1998) Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl., 36, 2825. In an effort to develop an unnatural base pair satisfying all the above requirements, Schultz, Romesberg and co-workers have systematically synthesized and studied a series of unnatural hydrophobic bases. A PICS:PICS self-pair is found to be more stable than natural base pairs, and can be efficiently incorporated into DNA by Klenow fragment of Escherichia coli DNA polymerase I (KF). See, e.g., McMinn et al., (1999) J. Am. Chem. Soc., 121:11586; and Ogawa et al., (2000) J. Am. Chem. Soc., 122:3274. A 3MN:3MN self-pair can be synthesized by KF with efficiency and selectivity sufficient for biological function. See, e.g., Ogawa et al., (2000) J. Am. Chem. Soc., 122:8803. However, both bases act as a chain terminator for further replication. A mutant DNA polymerase has been recently evolved that can be used to replicate the PICS self pair. In addition, a 7AI self pair can be replicated. See, e.g., Tae et al., (2001) J. Am. Chem. Soc., 123:7439. A novel metallobase pair, Dipic:Py, has also been developed, which forms a stable pair upon binding Cu(II). See, Meggers et al., (2000) J. Am. Chem. Soc., 122:10714. Because extended codons and unnatural codons are intrinsically orthogonal to natural codons, the methods of the invention can take advantage of this property to generate orthogonal tRNAs for them.

[163] A translational bypassing system can also be used to incorporate an unnatural amino acid in a desired polypeptide. In a translational bypassing system, a large sequence is incorporated into a gene but is not translated into protein. The sequence contains a structure that serves as a cue to induce the ribosome to hop over the sequence and resume translation downstream of the insertion.

[164] In certain embodiments, the protein or polypeptide of interest (or portion thereof) in the methods and/or compositions of the invention is encoded by a nucleic acid.

Typically, the nucleic acid comprises at least one selector codon, at least two selector codons, at least three selector codons, at least four selector codons, at least five selector codons, at least six selector codons, at least seven selector codons, at least eight selector codons, at least nine selector codons, ten or more selector codons.

5 [165] Genes coding for proteins or polypeptides of interest can be mutagenized using methods well-known to one of skill in the art and described herein under "Mutagenesis and Other Molecular Biology Techniques" to include, for example, one or more selector codon for the incorporation of an unnatural amino acid. For example, a nucleic acid for a protein of interest is mutagenized to include one or more selector codon, providing for the
10 incorporation of the one or more unnatural amino acids. The invention includes any such variant, including but not limited to, mutant, versions of any protein, for example, including at least one unnatural amino acid. Similarly, the invention also includes corresponding nucleic acids, i.e., any nucleic acid with one or more selector codon that encodes one or more unnatural amino acid.

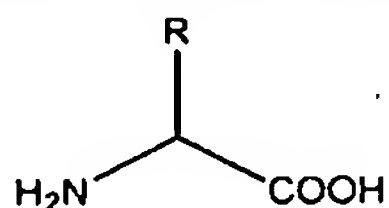
15 [166] Nucleic acid molecules encoding a protein of interest such as hIFN may be readily mutated to introduce a cysteine at any desired position of the polypeptide. Cysteine is widely used to introduce reactive molecules, water soluble polymers, proteins, or a wide variety of other molecules, onto a protein of interest. Methods suitable for the incorporation of cysteine into a desired position of the hIFN polypeptide are well known in the art, such as
20 those described in U.S. Patent No. 6,608,183, which is incorporated by reference herein, and standard mutagenesis techniques.

IV. Non-Naturally Encoded Amino Acids

[167] A very wide variety of non-naturally encoded amino acids are suitable for use in the present invention. Any number of non-naturally encoded amino acids can be
25 introduced into hIFN. In general, the introduced non-naturally encoded amino acids are substantially chemically inert toward the 20 common, genetically-encoded amino acids (i.e., alanine, arginine, asparagine, aspartic acid, cysteine, glutamine, glutamic acid, glycine, histidine, isoleucine, leucine, lysine, methionine, phenylalanine, proline, serine, threonine, tryptophan, tyrosine, and valine). In some embodiments, the non-naturally encoded amino
30 acids include side chain functional groups that react efficiently and selectively with functional groups not found in the 20 common amino acids (including but not limited to, azido, ketone, aldehyde and aminooxy groups) to form stable conjugates. For example, a hIFN polypeptide that includes a non-naturally encoded amino acid containing an azido

functional group can be reacted with a polymer (including but not limited to, poly(ethylene glycol) or, alternatively, a second polypeptide containing an alkyne moiety to form a stable conjugate resulting for the selective reaction of the azide and the alkyne functional groups to form a Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition product.

5 [168] The generic structure of an alpha-amino acid is illustrated as follows:

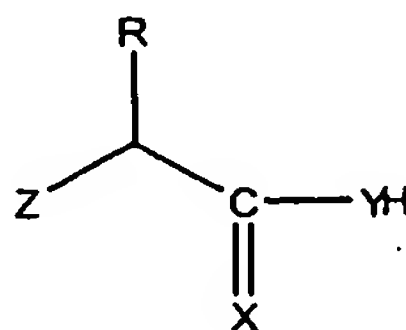


[169] A non-naturally encoded amino acid is typically any structure having the above-listed formula wherein the R group is any substituent other than one used in the twenty natural amino acids, and may be suitable for use in the present invention. Because the non-naturally encoded amino acids of the invention typically differ from the natural amino acids only in the structure of the side chain, the non-naturally encoded amino acids form amide bonds with other amino acids, including but not limited to, natural or non-naturally encoded, in the same manner in which they are formed in naturally occurring polypeptides. However, the non-naturally encoded amino acids have side chain groups that distinguish them from the natural amino acids. For example, R optionally comprises an alkyl-, aryl-, acyl-, keto-, azido-, hydroxyl-, hydrazine, cyano-, halo-, hydrazide, alkenyl, alkynyl, ether, thiol, seleno-, sulfonyl-, borate, boronate, phospho, phosphono, phosphine, heterocyclic, enone, imine, aldehyde, ester, thioacid, hydroxylamine, amino group, or the like or any combination thereof. Other non-naturally occurring amino acids of interest that may be suitable for use in the present invention include, but are not limited to, amino acids comprising a photoactivatable cross-linker, spin-labeled amino acids, fluorescent amino acids, metal binding amino acids, metal-containing amino acids, radioactive amino acids, amino acids with novel functional groups, amino acids that covalently or noncovalently interact with other molecules, photocaged and/or photoisomerizable amino acids, amino acids comprising biotin or a biotin analogue, glycosylated amino acids such as a sugar substituted serine, other carbohydrate modified amino acids, keto-containing amino acids, amino acids comprising polyethylene glycol or polyether, heavy atom substituted amino acids, chemically cleavable and/or photocleavable amino acids, amino acids with an elongated side chains as compared to natural amino acids, including but not limited to, polyethers or long chain hydrocarbons, including but not limited to, greater than about 5 or greater than about 10 carbons, carbon-linked sugar-containing amino acids, redox-active amino acids, amino thioacid containing amino acids, and amino acids comprising one or more toxic moiety.

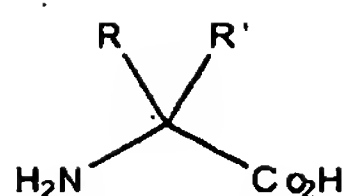
[170] Exemplary non-naturally encoded amino acids that may be suitable for use in the present invention and that are useful for reactions with water soluble polymers include, but are not limited to, those with carbonyl, aminooxy, hydroxylamine, hydrazide, semicarbazide, azide and alkyne reactive groups. In some embodiments, non-naturally encoded amino acids comprise a saccharide moiety. Examples of such amino acids include *N*-acetyl-L-glucosaminyl-L-serine, *N*-acetyl-L-galactosaminyl-L-serine, *N*-acetyl-L-glucosaminyl-L-threonine, *N*-acetyl-L-glucosaminyl-L-asparagine and *O*-mannosaminyl-L-serine. Examples of such amino acids also include examples where the naturally-occurring N- or O- linkage between the amino acid and the saccharide is replaced by a covalent linkage not commonly found in nature – including but not limited to, an alkene, an oxime, a thioether, an amide and the like. Examples of such amino acids also include saccharides that are not commonly found in naturally-occurring proteins such as 2-deoxy-glucose, 2-deoxygalactose and the like.

[171] Many of the non-naturally encoded amino acids provided herein are commercially available, e.g., from Sigma-Aldrich (St. Louis, MO, USA), Novabiochem (a division of EMD Biosciences, Darmstadt, Germany), or Peptech (Burlington, MA, USA). Those that are not commercially available are optionally synthesized as provided herein or using standard methods known to those of skill in the art. For organic synthesis techniques, see, e.g., Organic Chemistry by Fessenden and Fessenden, (1982, Second Edition, Willard Grant Press, Boston Mass.); Advanced Organic Chemistry by March (Third Edition, 1985, Wiley and Sons, New York); and Advanced Organic Chemistry by Carey and Sundberg (Third Edition, Parts A and B, 1990, Plenum Press, New York). See, also, U.S. Patent Application Publications 2003/0082575 and 2003/0108885, incorporated by reference herein. In addition to unnatural amino acids that contain novel side chains, unnatural amino acids that may be suitable for use in the present invention also optionally comprise modified backbone structures, including but not limited to, as illustrated by the structures of Formula II and III:

II



III



wherein Z typically comprises OH, NH₂, SH, NH-R', or S-R'; X and Y, which can be the same or different, typically comprise S or O, and R and R', which are optionally the same or different, are typically selected from the same list of constituents for the R group described above for the unnatural amino acids having Formula I as well as hydrogen. For example, unnatural amino acids of the invention optionally comprise substitutions in the amino or carboxyl group as illustrated by Formulas II and III. Unnatural amino acids of this type include, but are not limited to, α-hydroxy acids, α-thioacids α-aminothiocarboxylates, including but not limited to, with side chains corresponding to the common twenty natural amino acids or unnatural side chains. In addition, substitutions at the α-carbon optionally include, but are not limited to, L, D, or α-α-disubstituted amino acids such as D-glutamate, D-alanine, D-methyl-O-tyrosine, aminobutyric acid, and the like. Other structural alternatives include cyclic amino acids, such as proline analogues as well as 3,4,6,7,8, and 9 membered ring proline analogues, β and γ amino acids such as substituted β-alanine and γ-amino butyric acid.

[172] Many unnatural amino acids are based on natural amino acids, such as tyrosine, glutamine, phenylalanine, and the like, and are suitable for use in the present invention. Tyrosine analogs include, but are not limited to, para-substituted tyrosines, ortho-substituted tyrosines, and meta substituted tyrosines, where the substituted tyrosine comprises, including but not limited to, a keto group (including but not limited to, an acetyl group), a benzoyl group, an amino group, a hydrazine, an hydroxyamine, a thiol group, a carboxy group, an isopropyl group, a methyl group, a C₆ - C₂₀ straight chain or branched hydrocarbon, a saturated or unsaturated hydrocarbon, an O-methyl group, a polyether group, a nitro group, an alkynyl group or the like. In addition, multiply substituted aryl rings are also contemplated. Glutamine analogs that may be suitable for use in the present invention include, but are not limited to, α-hydroxy derivatives, γ-substituted derivatives, cyclic derivatives, and amide substituted glutamine derivatives. Example phenylalanine analogs that may be suitable for use in the present invention include, but are not limited to, para-substituted phenylalanines, ortho-substituted phenylalanines, and meta-substituted

phenylalanines, where the substituent comprises, including but not limited to, a hydroxy group, a methoxy group, a methyl group, an allyl group, an aldehyde, an azido, an iodo, a bromo, a keto group (including but not limited to, an acetyl group), a benzoyl, an alkynyl group, or the like. Specific examples of unnatural amino acids that may be suitable for use in the present invention include, but are not limited to, a *p*-acetyl-L-phenylalanine, a *p*-propargyloxyphenylalanine, O-methyl-L-tyrosine, an L-3-(2-naphthyl)alanine, a 3-methyl-phenylalanine, an O-4-allyl-L-tyrosine, a 4-propyl-L-tyrosine, a tri-O-acetyl-GlcNAc β -serine, an L-Dopa, a fluorinated phenylalanine, an isopropyl-L-phenylalanine, a *p*-azido-L-phenylalanine, a *p*-acyl-L-phenylalanine, a *p*-benzoyl-L-phenylalanine, an L-phosphoserine, a phosphoserine, a phosphotyrosine, a *p*-iodo-phenylalanine, a *p*-bromophenylalanine, a *p*-amino-L-phenylalanine, and an isopropyl-L-phenylalanine, *p*-propargyloxy-phenylalanine, and the like. Examples of structures of a variety of unnatural amino acids that may be suitable for use in the present invention are provided in, for example, WO 2002/085923 entitled "In vivo incorporation of unnatural amino acids." See also Kiick et al., (2002) *Incorporation of azides into recombinant proteins for chemoselective modification by the Staudinger ligation*, PNAS 99:19-24, for additional methionine analogs.

[173] In one embodiment, compositions of hIFN that include an unnatural amino acid (such as *p*-(propargyloxy)-phenylalanine) are provided. Various compositions comprising *p*-(propargyloxy)-phenylalanine and, including but not limited to, proteins and/or cells, are also provided. In one aspect, a composition that includes the *p*-(propargyloxy)-phenylalanine unnatural amino acid, further includes an orthogonal tRNA. The unnatural amino acid can be bonded (including but not limited to, covalently) to the orthogonal tRNA, including but not limited to, covalently bonded to the orthogonal tRNA through an amino-acyl bond, covalently bonded to a 3'OH or a 2'OH of a terminal ribose sugar of the orthogonal tRNA, etc.

[174] The chemical moieties via unnatural amino acids that can be incorporated into proteins offer a variety of advantages and manipulations of the protein. For example, the unique reactivity of a keto functional group allows selective modification of proteins with any of a number of hydrazine- or hydroxylamine-containing reagents in vitro and in vivo. A heavy atom unnatural amino acid, for example, can be useful for phasing x-ray structure data. The site-specific introduction of heavy atoms using unnatural amino acids also provides selectivity and flexibility in choosing positions for heavy atoms. Photoreactive unnatural amino acids (including but not limited to, amino acids with benzophenone and arylazides

(including but not limited to, phenylazide) side chains), for example, allow for efficient in vivo and in vitro photocrosslinking of protein. Examples of photoreactive unnatural amino acids include, but are not limited to, p-azido-phenylalanine and p-benzoyl-phenylalanine. The protein with the photoreactive unnatural amino acids can then be crosslinked at will by
 5 excitation of the photoreactive group-providing temporal control. In one example, the methyl group of an unnatural amino can be substituted with an isotopically labeled, including but not limited to, methyl group, as a probe of local structure and dynamics, including but not limited to, with the use of nuclear magnetic resonance and vibrational spectroscopy. Alkynyl or azido functional groups, for example, allow the selective modification of proteins with
 10 molecules through a [3+2] cycloaddition reaction.

Chemical Synthesis of Unnatural Amino Acids

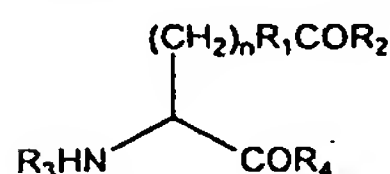
[175] Many of the unnatural amino acids suitable for use in the present invention are commercially available, e.g., from Sigma (USA) or Aldrich (Milwaukee, WI, USA). Those that are not commercially available are optionally synthesized as provided herein or as
 15 provided in various publications or using standard methods known to those of skill in the art. For organic synthesis techniques, see, e.g., Organic Chemistry by Fessenden and Fessenden, (1982, Second Edition, Willard Grant Press, Boston Mass.); Advanced Organic Chemistry by March (Third Edition, 1985, Wiley and Sons, New York); and Advanced Organic Chemistry by Carey and Sundberg (Third Edition, Parts A and B, 1990, Plenum Press, New York).
 20 Additional publications describing the synthesis of unnatural amino acids include, e.g., WO 2002/085923 entitled "In vivo incorporation of Unnatural Amino Acids;" Matsoukas et al., (1995) J. Med. Chem., 38, 4660-4669; King, F.E. & Kidd, D.A.A. (1949) *A New Synthesis of Glutamine and of γ -Dipeptides of Glutamic Acid from Phthylated Intermediates.* J. Chem. Soc., 3315-3319; Friedman, O.M. & Chatterji, R. (1959) *Synthesis of Derivatives of Glutamine as Model Substrates for Anti-Tumor Agents.* J. Am. Chem. Soc. 81, 3750-3752;
 25 Craig, J.C. et al. (1988) *Absolute Configuration of the Enantiomers of 7-Chloro-4 [[4-(diethylamino)-1-methylbutyl]amino]quinoline (Chloroquine).* J. Org. Chem. 53, 1167-1170; Azoulay, M., Vilmont, M. & Frappier, F. (1991) *Glutamine analogues as Potential Antimalarials.* Eur. J. Med. Chem. 26, 201-5; Koskinen, A.M.P. & Rapoport, H. (1989)
 30 *Synthesis of 4-Substituted Prolines as Conformationally Constrained Amino Acid Analogues.* J. Org. Chem. 54, 1859-1866; Christie, B.D. & Rapoport, H. (1985) *Synthesis of Optically Pure Pípecolates from L-Asparagine. Application to the Total Synthesis of (+)-Apovincamine through Amino Acid Decarbonylation and Iminium Ion Cyclization.* J. Org.

Chem. 1989:1859-1866; Barton et al., (1987) *Synthesis of Novel α -Amino-Acids and Derivatives Using Radical Chemistry: Synthesis of L- and D- α -Amino-Adipic Acids, L- α -aminopimelic Acid and Appropriate Unsaturated Derivatives.* Tetrahedron Lett. 43:4297-4308; and, Subasinghe et al., (1992) *Quisqualic acid analogues: synthesis of beta-heterocyclic 2-aminopropanoic acid derivatives and their activity at a novel quisqualate-sensitized site.* J. Med. Chem. 35:4602-7. See also, patent application entitled "Protein Arrays," attorney docket number P1001US00 filed on December 22, 2002.

A. Carbonyl reactive groups

[176] Amino acids with a carbonyl reactive group allow for a variety of reactions to link molecules (including but not limited to, PEG or other water soluble molecules) via nucleophilic addition or aldol condensation reactions among others.

[177] Exemplary carbonyl-containing amino acids can be represented as follows:



wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, or substituted aryl; R₂ is H, alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, and substituted aryl; and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus modification group, and R₄ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus modification group. In some embodiments, n is 1, R₁ is phenyl and R₂ is a simple alkyl (i.e., methyl, ethyl, or propyl) and the ketone moiety is positioned in the *para* position relative to the alkyl side chain. In some embodiments, n is 1, R₁ is phenyl and R₂ is a simple alkyl (i.e., methyl, ethyl, or propyl) and the ketone moiety is positioned in the *meta* position relative to the alkyl side chain.

[178] The synthesis of *p*-acetyl-(+/-)-phenylalanine and *m*-acetyl-(+/-)-phenylalanine is described in Zhang, Z., et al., *Biochemistry* 42: 6735-6746 (2003), incorporated by reference. Other carbonyl-containing amino acids can be similarly prepared by one skilled in the art.

[179] In some embodiments, a polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid is chemically modified to generate a reactive carbonyl functional group. For instance, an aldehyde functionality useful for conjugation reactions can be generated from a functionality having adjacent amino and hydroxyl groups. Where the biologically active molecule is a polypeptide, for example, an *N*-terminal serine or threonine (which may be normally present or may be exposed via chemical or enzymatic digestion) can be used to generate an aldehyde functionality under mild oxidative cleavage conditions using periodate.

AMBX-0019.00US

See, e.g., Gaertner, *et al.*, *Bioconjug. Chem.* 3: 262-268 (1992); Geoghegan, K. & Stroh, J., *Bioconjug. Chem.* 3:138-146 (1992); Gaertner *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269:7224-7230 (1994). However, methods known in the art are restricted to the amino acid at the *N*-terminus of the peptide or protein.

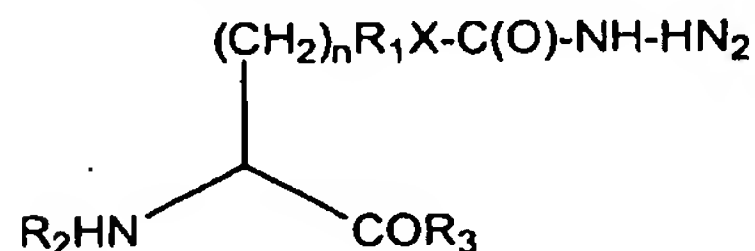
5 [180] In the present invention, a non-naturally encoded amino acid bearing adjacent hydroxyl and amino groups can be incorporated into the polypeptide as a "masked" aldehyde functionality. For example, 5-hydroxylysine bears a hydroxyl group adjacent to the epsilon amine. Reaction conditions for generating the aldehyde typically involve addition of molar excess of sodium metaperiodate under mild conditions to avoid oxidation at other sites within
10 the polypeptide. The pH of the oxidation reaction is typically about 7.0. A typical reaction involves the addition of about 1.5 molar excess of sodium meta periodate to a buffered solution of the polypeptide, followed by incubation for about 10 minutes in the dark. See, e.g. U.S. Patent No. 6,423,685.

[181] The carbonyl functionality can be reacted selectively with a hydrazine-
15 hydrazide-, hydroxylamine-, or semicarbazide-containing reagent under mild conditions in aqueous solution to form the corresponding hydrazone, oxime, or semicarbazone linkages, respectively, that are stable under physiological conditions. See, e.g., Jencks, W. P., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 81, 475-481 (1959); Shao, J. and Tam, J. P., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 117:3893-3899 (1995). Moreover, the unique reactivity of the carbonyl group allows for selective
20 modification in the presence of the other amino acid side chains. See, e.g., Cornish, V. W., *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 118:8150-8151 (1996); Geoghegan, K. F. & Stroh, J. G., *Bioconjug. Chem.* 3:138-146 (1992); Mahal, L. K., *et al.*, *Science* 276:1125-1128 (1997).

B. Hydrazine, hydrazide or semicarbazide reactive groups

25 [182] Non-naturally encoded amino acids containing a nucleophilic group, such as a hydrazine, hydrazide or semicarbazide, allow for reaction with a variety of electrophilic groups to form conjugates (including but not limited to, with PEG or other water soluble polymers).

[183] Exemplary hydrazine, hydrazide or semicarbazide -containing amino acids can
30 be represented as follows:



AMBX-0019.00US

wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, or substituted aryl or not present; X, is O, N, or S or not present; R₂ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus modification group, and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus modification group.

5 [184] In some embodiments, n is 4, R₁ is not present, and X is N. In some embodiments, n is 2, R₁ is not present, and X is not present. In some embodiments, n is 1, R₁ is phenyl, X is O, and the oxygen atom is positioned *para* to the aliphatic group on the aryl ring.

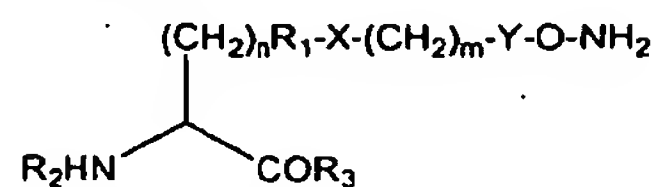
[185] Hydrazide-, hydrazine-, and semicarbazide-containing amino acids are
10 available from commercial sources. For instance, L-glutamate- γ -hydrazide is available from Sigma Chemical (St. Louis, MO). Other amino acids not available commercially can be prepared by one skilled in the art. See, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 6,281,211.

[186] Polypeptides containing non-naturally encoded amino acids that bear hydrazide, hydrazine or semicarbazide functionalities can be reacted efficiently and
15 selectively with a variety of molecules that contain aldehydes or other functional groups with similar chemical reactivity. See, e.g., Shao, J. and Tam, J., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 117:3893-3899 (1995). The unique reactivity of hydrazide, hydrazine and semicarbazide functional groups makes them significantly more reactive toward aldehydes, ketones and other electrophilic groups as compared to the nucleophilic groups present on the 20 common amino acids
20 (including but not limited to, the hydroxyl group of serine or threonine or the amino groups of lysine and the N-terminus).

C. Aminooxy-containing amino acids

[187] Non-naturally encoded amino acids containing an aminooxy (also called a
25 hydroxylamine) group allow for reaction with a variety of electrophilic groups to form conjugates (including but not limited to, with PEG or other water soluble polymers). Like hydrazines, hydrazides and semicarbazides, the enhanced nucleophilicity of the aminooxy group permits it to react efficiently and selectively with a variety of molecules that contain aldehydes or other functional groups with similar chemical reactivity. See, e.g., Shao, J. and
30 Tam, J., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 117:3893-3899 (1995); H. Hang and C. Bertozzi, *Acc. Chem. Res.* 34: 727-736 (2001). Whereas the result of reaction with a hydrazine group is the corresponding hydrazone, however, an oxime results generally from the reaction of an aminooxy group with a carbonyl-containing group such as a ketone.

[188] Exemplary amino acids containing aminooxy groups can be represented as follows:



- wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, or substituted aryl or not present; X is O, N, S or not present; m is 0-10; Y = C(O) or not present; R₂ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus modification group, and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus modification group. In some embodiments, n is 1, R₁ is phenyl, X is O, m is 1, and Y is present. In some embodiments, n is 2, R₁ and X are not present, m is 0, and Y is not present.
- 10 [189] Aminooxy-containing amino acids can be prepared from readily available amino acid precursors (homoserine, serine and threonine). *See, e.g.*, M. Carrasco and R. Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* 68: 8853-8858 (2003). Certain aminooxy-containing amino acids, such as L-2-amino-4-(aminooxy)butyric acid), have been isolated from natural sources (Rosenthal, G. et al., *Life Sci.* 60: 1635-1641 (1997). Other aminooxy-containing amino acids can be prepared by one skilled in the art.

D. Azide and alkyne reactive groups

- [190] The unique reactivity of azide and alkyne functional groups makes them extremely useful for the selective modification of polypeptides and other biological molecules. Organic azides, particularly aliphatic azides, and alkynes are generally stable toward common reactive chemical conditions. In particular, both the azide and the alkyne functional groups are inert toward the side chains (i.e., R groups) of the 20 common amino acids found in naturally-occurring polypeptides. When brought into close proximity, however, the "spring-loaded" nature of the azide and alkyne groups is revealed and they react selectively and efficiently via Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition reaction to generate the corresponding triazole. *See, e.g.*, Chin J., et al., *Science* 301:964-7 (2003); Wang, Q., et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 125, 3192-3193 (2003); Chin, J. W., et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 124:9026-9027 (2002).

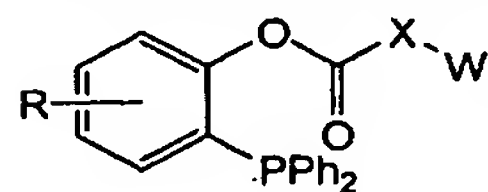
- [191] Because the Huisgen cycloaddition reaction involves a selective cycloaddition reaction (*see, e.g.*, Padwa, A., in *COMPREHENSIVE ORGANIC SYNTHESIS*, Vol. 4, (ed. Trost, B. M., 1991), p. 1069-1109; Huisgen, R. in *1,3-DIPOLAR CYCLOADDITION CHEMISTRY*, (ed. Padwa, A., 1984), p. 1-176) rather than a nucleophilic substitution, the incorporation of non-

naturally encoded amino acids bearing azide and alkyne-containing side chains permits the resultant polypeptides to be modified selectively at the position of the non-naturally encoded amino acid. Cycloaddition reaction involving azide or alkyne-containing hIFN can be carried out at room temperature under aqueous conditions by the addition of Cu(II) (including but not limited to, in the form of a catalytic amount of CuSO₄) in the presence of a reducing agent for reducing Cu(II) to Cu(I), in situ, in catalytic amount. See, e.g., Wang, Q., et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 125, 3192-3193 (2003); Tornøe, C. W., et al., *J. Org. Chem.* 67:3057-3064 (2002); Rostovtsev, et al., *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed.* 41:2596-2599 (2002). Exemplary reducing agents include, including but not limited to, ascorbate, metallic copper, quinine, hydroquinone, vitamin K, glutathione, cysteine, Fe²⁺, Co²⁺, and an applied electric potential.

[192] In some cases, where a Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition reaction between an azide and an alkyne is desired, the hIFN polypeptide comprises a non-naturally encoded amino acid comprising an alkyne moiety and the water soluble polymer to be attached to the amino acid comprises an azide moiety. Alternatively, the converse reaction (i.e., with the azide moiety on the amino acid and the alkyne moiety present on the water soluble polymer) can also be performed.

[193] The azide functional group can also be reacted selectively with a water soluble polymer containing an aryl ester and appropriately functionalized with an aryl phosphine moiety to generate an amide linkage. The aryl phosphine group reduces the azide *in situ* and the resulting amine then reacts efficiently with a proximal ester linkage to generate the corresponding amide. See, e.g., E. Saxon and C. Bertozzi, *Science* 287, 2007-2010 (2000). The azide-containing amino acid can be either an alkyl azide (including but not limited to, 2-amino-6-azido-1-hexanoic acid) or an aryl azide (p-azido-phenylalanine).

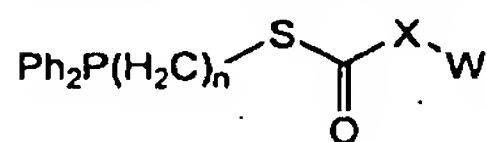
[194] Exemplary water soluble polymers containing an aryl ester and a phosphine moiety can be represented as follows:



wherein X can be O, N, S or not present, Ph is phenyl, W is a water soluble polymer and R can be H, alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl and substituted aryl groups. Exemplary R groups include but are not limited to -CH₂, -C(CH₃)₃, -OR', -NR'R'', -SR', -halogen, -C(O)R', -CONR'R'', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)₂NR'R'', -CN and -NO₂. R', R'', R''' and R'''' each independently refer to hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted heteroalkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, including but not limited to, aryl substituted with 1-3 halogens, substituted or unsubstituted

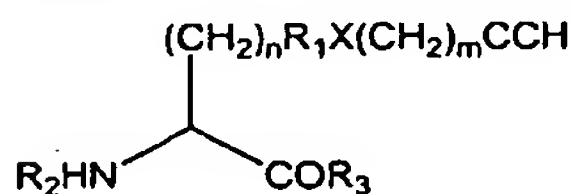
alkyl, alkoxy or thioalkoxy groups, or arylalkyl groups. When a compound of the invention includes more than one R group, for example, each of the R groups is independently selected as are each R', R'', R''' and R'''' groups when more than one of these groups is present. When R' and R'' are attached to the same nitrogen atom, they can be combined with the nitrogen atom to form a 5-, 6-, or 7-membered ring. For example, -NR'R'' is meant to include, but not be limited to, 1-pyrrolidiny and 4-morpholinyl. From the above discussion of substituents, one of skill in the art will understand that the term "alkyl" is meant to include groups including carbon atoms bound to groups other than hydrogen groups, such as haloalkyl (including but not limited to, -CF₃ and -CH₂CF₃) and acyl (including but not limited to, -C(O)CH₃, -C(O)CF₃, -C(O)CH₂OCH₃, and the like).

[195] The azide functional group can also be reacted selectively with a water soluble polymer containing a thioester and appropriately functionalized with an aryl phosphine moiety to generate an amide linkage. The aryl phosphine group reduces the azide in situ and the resulting amine then reacts efficiently with the thioester linkage to generate the corresponding amide. Exemplary water soluble polymers containing a thioester and a phosphine moiety can be represented as follows:



wherein n is 1-10; X can be O, N, S or not present, Ph is phenyl, and W is a water soluble polymer.

[196] Exemplary alkyne-containing amino acids can be represented as follows:



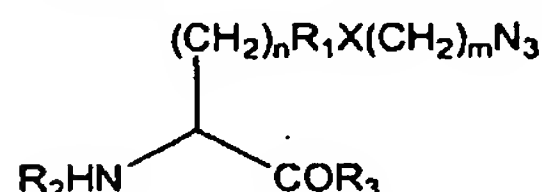
wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, or substituted aryl or not present; X is O, N, S or not present; m is 0-10, R₂ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus modification group, and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus modification group. In some embodiments, n is 1, R₁ is phenyl, X is not present, m is 0 and the acetylene moiety is positioned in the para position relative to the alkyl side chain. In some embodiments, n is 1, R₁ is phenyl, X is O, m is 1 and the propargyloxy group is positioned in the para position relative to the alkyl side chain (i.e., O-propargyl-tyrosine). In some embodiments, n is 1, R₁ and X are not present and m is 0 (i.e., propargylglycine).

[197] Alkyne-containing amino acids are commercially available. For example, propargylglycine is commercially available from Peptech (Burlington, MA). Alternatively,

alkyne-containing amino acids can be prepared according to standard methods. For instance, *p*-propargyloxyphenylalanine can be synthesized, for example, as described in Deiters, A., *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 125: 11782-11783 (2003), and 4-alkynyl-L-phenylalanine can be synthesized as described in Kayser, B., *et al.*, *Tetrahedron* 53(7): 2475-2484 (1997). Other

5 alkyne-containing amino acids can be prepared by one skilled in the art.

[198] Exemplary azide-containing amino acids can be represented as follows:



wherein *n* is 0-10; *R*₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, substituted aryl or not present; *X* is O, N, S or not present; *m* is 0-10; *R*₂ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus
10 modification group, and *R*₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus modification group. In some embodiments, *n* is 1, *R*₁ is phenyl, *X* is not present, *m* is 0 and the azide moiety is positioned *para* to the alkyl side chain. In some embodiments, *n* is 0-4 and *R*₁ and *X* are not present, and *m*=0. In some embodiments, *n* is 1, *R*₁ is phenyl, *X* is O, *m* is 2 and the β-azidoethoxy moiety is positioned in the *para* position relative to the alkyl side
15 chain.

[199] Azide-containing amino acids are available from commercial sources. For instance, 4-azidophenylalanine can be obtained from Chem-Impex International, Inc. (Wood Dale, IL). For those azide-containing amino acids that are not commercially available, the azide group can be prepared relatively readily using standard methods known to those of skill
20 in the art, including but not limited to; via displacement of a suitable leaving group (including but not limited to, halide, mesylate, tosylate) or via opening of a suitably protected lactone. See, e.g., Advanced Organic Chemistry by March (Third Edition, 1985, Wiley and Sons, New York).

E. Aminothiol reactive groups

25 [200] The unique reactivity of beta-substituted aminothiol functional groups makes them extremely useful for the selective modification of polypeptides and other biological molecules that contain aldehyde groups via formation of the thiazolidine. See, e.g., J. Shao and J. Tam, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1995, 117 (14) 3893-3899. In some embodiments, beta-substituted aminothiol amino acids can be incorporated into hIFN polypeptides and then
30 reacted with water soluble polymers comprising an aldehyde functionality. In some embodiments, a water soluble polymer, drug conjugate or other payload can be coupled to a

AMBX-0019.00US

hIFN polypeptide comprising a beta-substituted aminothiol amino acid via formation of the thiazolidine.

Cellular uptake of unnatural amino acids

[201] Unnatural amino acid uptake by a eukaryotic cell is one issue that is typically considered when designing and selecting unnatural amino acids, including but not limited to, for incorporation into a protein. For example, the high charge density of α -amino acids suggests that these compounds are unlikely to be cell permeable. Natural amino acids are taken up into the eukaryotic cell via a collection of protein-based transport systems. A rapid screen can be done which assesses which unnatural amino acids, if any, are taken up by cells. See, e.g., the toxicity assays in, e.g., the application entitled "Protein Arrays," attorney docket number P1001US00 filed on December 22, 2002; and Liu, D.R. & Schultz, P.G. (1999) *Progress toward the evolution of an organism with an expanded genetic code*. PNAS United States 96:4780-4785. Although uptake is easily analyzed with various assays, an alternative to designing unnatural amino acids that are amenable to cellular uptake pathways is to provide biosynthetic pathways to create amino acids *in vivo*.

Biosynthesis of Unnatural Amino Acids

[202] Many biosynthetic pathways already exist in cells for the production of amino acids and other compounds. While a biosynthetic method for a particular unnatural amino acid may not exist in nature, including but not limited to, in a eukaryotic cell, the invention provides such methods. For example, biosynthetic pathways for unnatural amino acids are optionally generated in host cell by adding new enzymes or modifying existing host cell pathways. Additional new enzymes are optionally naturally occurring enzymes or artificially evolved enzymes. For example, the biosynthesis of *p*-aminophenylalanine (as presented in an example in WO 2002/085923 entitled "In vivo incorporation of unnatural amino acids") relies on the addition of a combination of known enzymes from other organisms. The genes for these enzymes can be introduced into a eukaryotic cell by transforming the cell with a plasmid comprising the genes. The genes, when expressed in the cell, provide an enzymatic pathway to synthesize the desired compound. Examples of the types of enzymes that are optionally added are provided in the examples below. Additional enzymes sequences are found, for example, in Genbank. Artificially evolved enzymes are also optionally added into a cell in the same manner. In this manner, the cellular machinery and resources of a cell are manipulated to produce unnatural amino acids.

[203] A variety of methods are available for producing novel enzymes for use in biosynthetic pathways or for evolution of existing pathways. For example, recursive recombination, including but not limited to, as developed by Maxygen, Inc. (available on the world wide web at www.maxygen.com), is optionally used to develop novel enzymes and pathways. See, e.g., Stemmer (1994), *Rapid evolution of a protein in vitro by DNA shuffling*, Nature 370(4):389-391; and, Stemmer, (1994), *DNA shuffling by random fragmentation and reassembly: In vitro recombination for molecular evolution*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA., 91:10747-10751. Similarly DesignPath™, developed by Genencor (available on the world wide web at genencor.com) is optionally used for metabolic pathway engineering, including but not limited to, to engineer a pathway to create O-methyl-L-trosine in a cell. This technology reconstructs existing pathways in host organisms using a combination of new genes, including but not limited to, identified through functional genomics, and molecular evolution and design. Diversa Corporation (available on the world wide web at diversa.com) also provides technology for rapidly screening libraries of genes and gene pathways, including but not limited to, to create new pathways.

[204] Typically, the unnatural amino acid produced with an engineered biosynthetic pathway of the invention is produced in a concentration sufficient for efficient protein biosynthesis, including but not limited to, a natural cellular amount, but not to such a degree as to affect the concentration of the other amino acids or exhaust cellular resources. Typical concentrations produced *in vivo* in this manner are about 10 mM to about 0.05 mM. Once a cell is transformed with a plasmid comprising the genes used to produce enzymes desired for a specific pathway and an unnatural amino acid is generated, *in vivo* selections are optionally used to further optimize the production of the unnatural amino acid for both ribosomal protein synthesis and cell growth.

25 POLYPEPTIDES WITH UNNATURAL AMINO ACIDS

[205] The incorporation of an unnatural amino acid can be done for a variety of purposes, including but not limited to, tailoring changes in protein structure and/or function, changing size, acidity, nucleophilicity, hydrogen bonding, hydrophobicity, accessibility of protease target sites, targeting to a moiety (including but not limited to, for a protein array), etc. Proteins that include an unnatural amino acid can have enhanced or even entirely new catalytic or biophysical properties. For example, the following properties are optionally modified by inclusion of an unnatural amino acid into a protein: toxicity, biodistribution, structural properties, spectroscopic properties, chemical and/or photochemical properties,

catalytic ability, half-life (including but not limited to, serum half-life), ability to react with other molecules, including but not limited to, covalently or noncovalently, and the like. The compositions including proteins that include at least one unnatural amino acid are useful for, including but not limited to, novel therapeutics, diagnostics, catalytic enzymes, industrial enzymes, binding proteins (including but not limited to, antibodies), and including but not limited to, the study of protein structure and function. See, e.g., Dougherty, (2000) *Unnatural Amino Acids as Probes of Protein Structure and Function*, Current Opinion in Chemical Biology, 4:645-652.

[206] In one aspect of the invention, a composition includes at least one protein with at least one, including but not limited to, at least two, at least three, at least four, at least five, at least six, at least seven, at least eight, at least nine, or at least ten or more unnatural amino acids. The unnatural amino acids can be the same or different, including but not limited to, there can be 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10 or more different sites in the protein that comprise 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10 or more different unnatural amino acids. In another aspect, a composition includes a protein with at least one, but fewer than all, of a particular amino acid present in the protein is substituted with the unnatural amino acid. For a given protein with more than one unnatural amino acids, the unnatural amino acids can be identical or different (including but not limited to, the protein can include two or more different types of unnatural amino acids, or can include two of the same unnatural amino acid). For a given protein with more than two unnatural amino acids, the unnatural amino acids can be the same, different or a combination of a multiple unnatural amino acid of the same kind with at least one different unnatural amino acid.

[207] Proteins or polypeptides of interest with at least one unnatural amino acid are a feature of the invention. The invention also includes polypeptides or proteins with at least one unnatural amino acid produced using the compositions and methods of the invention. An excipient (including but not limited to, a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient) can also be present with the protein.

[208] By producing proteins or polypeptides of interest with at least one unnatural amino acid in eukaryotic cells, proteins or polypeptides will typically include eukaryotic posttranslational modifications. In certain embodiments, a protein includes at least one unnatural amino acid and at least one post-translational modification that is made in vivo by a eukaryotic cell, where the post-translational modification is not made by a prokaryotic cell. For example, the post-translation modification includes, including but not limited to,

acetylation, acylation, lipid-modification, palmitoylation, palmitate addition, phosphorylation, glycolipid-linkage modification, glycosylation, and the like. In one aspect, the post-translational modification includes attachment of an oligosaccharide (including but not limited to, (GlcNAc-Man)₂-Man-GlcNAc-GlcNAc)) to an asparagine by a GlcNAc-asparagine linkage. See Table 1 which lists some examples of N-linked oligosaccharides of eukaryotic proteins (additional residues can also be present, which are not shown). In another aspect, the post-translational modification includes attachment of an oligosaccharide (including but not limited to, Gal-GalNAc, Gal-GlcNAc, etc.) to a serine or threonine by a GalNAc-serine or GalNAc-threonine linkage, or a GlcNAc-serine or a GlcNAc-threonine linkage.

TABLE 1: EXAMPLES OF OLIGOSACCHARIDES THROUGH GlcNAc-LINKAGE

Type	Base Structure
High-mannose	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{Man}\alpha 1-6 \\ \text{Man}\alpha 1-3 \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \text{Man}\alpha 1-6 \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \text{Man}\alpha 1-3 \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \text{Man}\beta 1-4\text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-4\text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-\text{Asn} \end{array} $
Hybrid	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{Man}\alpha 1-6 \\ \text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-2 \quad \text{---} \quad \text{Man}\alpha 1-3 \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \text{Man}\beta 1-4\text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-4\text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-\text{Asn} \end{array} $
Complex	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-2 \quad \text{---} \quad \text{Man}\alpha 1-6 \\ \text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-2 \quad \text{---} \quad \text{Man}\alpha 1-3 \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \text{Man}\beta 1-4\text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-4\text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-\text{Asn} \end{array} $
Xylose	$ \begin{array}{c} \text{Man}\alpha 1-6 \\ \text{Xyl}\beta 1-2 \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \text{Man}\beta 1-4\text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-4\text{GlcNAc}\beta 1-\text{Asn} \end{array} $

[209] In yet another aspect, the post-translation modification includes proteolytic processing of precursors (including but not limited to, calcitonin precursor, calcitonin gene-related peptide precursor, preproparathyroid hormone, preproinsulin, proinsulin, prepro-opiomelanocortin, pro-opiomelanocortin and the like), assembly into a multisubunit protein or macromolecular assembly, translation to another site in the cell (including but not limited to, to organelles, such as the endoplasmic reticulum, the golgi apparatus, the nucleus, lysosomes, peroxisomes, mitochondria, chloroplasts, vacuoles, etc., or through the secretory

pathway). In certain embodiments, the protein comprises a secretion or localization sequence, an epitope tag, a FLAG tag, a polyhistidine tag, a GST fusion, or the like.

[210] One advantage of an unnatural amino acid is that it presents additional chemical moieties that can be used to add additional molecules. These modifications can be made in vivo in a eukaryotic or non-eukaryotic cell, or in vitro. Thus, in certain embodiments, the post-translational modification is through the unnatural amino acid. For example, the post-translational modification can be through a nucleophilic-electrophilic reaction. Most reactions currently used for the selective modification of proteins involve covalent bond formation between nucleophilic and electrophilic reaction partners, including but not limited to the reaction of α -haloketones with histidine or cysteine side chains. Selectivity in these cases is determined by the number and accessibility of the nucleophilic residues in the protein. In proteins of the invention, other more selective reactions can be used such as the reaction of an unnatural keto-amino acid with hydrazides or aminooxy compounds, in vitro and in vivo. See, e.g., Cornish, et al., (1996) Am. Chem. Soc., 118:8150-8151; Mahal, et al., (1997) Science, 276:1125-1128; Wang, et al., (2001) Science 292:498-500; Chin, et al., (2002) Am. Chem. Soc. 124:9026-9027; Chin, et al., (2002) Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., 99:11020-11024; Wang, et al., (2003) Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., 100:56-61; Zhang, et al., (2003) Biochemistry, 42:6735-6746; and, Chin, et al., (2003) Science, in press. This allows the selective labeling of virtually any protein with a host of reagents including fluorophores, crosslinking agents, saccharide derivatives and cytotoxic molecules. See also, U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 10/686,944 entitled "Glycoprotein synthesis" filed January 16, 2003, which is incorporated by reference herein. Post-translational modifications, including but not limited to, through an azido amino acid, can also be made through the Staudinger ligation (including but not limited to, with triarylphosphine reagents). See, e.g., Kiick et al., (2002) *Incorporation of azides into recombinant proteins for chemoselective modification by the Staudinger ligation*, PNAS 99:19-24.

[211] This invention provides another highly efficient method for the selective modification of proteins, which involves the genetic incorporation of unnatural amino acids, including but not limited to, containing an azide or alkynyl moiety into proteins in response to a selector codon. These amino acid side chains can then be modified by, including but not limited to, a Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition reaction (see, e.g., Padwa, A. in Comprehensive Organic Synthesis, Vol. 4, (1991) Ed. Trost, B. M., Pergamon, Oxford, p. 1069-1109; and, Huisgen, R. in 1,3-Dipolar Cycloaddition Chemistry, (1984) Ed. Padwa, A., Wiley, New

York, p. 1-176) with, including but not limited to, alkynyl or azide derivatives, respectively. Because this method involves a cycloaddition rather than a nucleophilic substitution, proteins can be modified with extremely high selectivity. This reaction can be carried out at room temperature in aqueous conditions with excellent regioselectivity (1,4 > 1,5) by the addition of catalytic amounts of Cu(I) salts to the reaction mixture. *See, e.g.,* Tornøe, et al., (2002) Org. Chem. 67:3057-3064; and, Rostovtsev, et al., (2002) Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. 41:2596-2599. Another method that can be used is the ligand exchange on a bisarsenic compound with a tetracysteine motif, *see, e.g.,* Griffin, et al., (1998) Science 281:269-272.

[212] A molecule that can be added to a protein of the invention through a [3+2] cycloaddition includes virtually any molecule with an azido or alkynyl derivative. Molecules include, but are not limited to, dyes, fluorophores, crosslinking agents, saccharide derivatives, polymers (including but not limited to, derivatives of polyethylene glycol), photocrosslinkers, cytotoxic compounds, affinity labels, derivatives of biotin, resins, beads, a second protein or polypeptide (or more), polynucleotide(s) (including but not limited to, DNA, RNA, etc.), metal chelators, cofactors, fatty acids, carbohydrates, and the like. These molecules can be added to an unnatural amino acid with an alkynyl group, including but not limited to, p-propargyloxyphenylalanine, or azido group, including but not limited to, p-azido-phenylalanine, respectively.

V. *In vivo generation of hIFN comprising non-genetically-encoded amino acids*

[213] The hIFN polypeptides of the invention can be generated *in vivo* using modified tRNA and tRNA synthetases to add to or substitute amino acids that are not encoded in naturally-occurring systems.

[214] Methods for generating tRNAs and tRNA synthetases which use amino acids that are not encoded in naturally-occurring systems are described in, e.g., U.S. Patent Application Publications 2003/0082575 (Serial No. 10/126,927) and 2003/0108885 (Serial No. 10/126,931) which are incorporated by reference herein. These methods involve generating a translational machinery that functions independently of the synthetases and tRNAs endogenous to the translation system (and are therefore sometimes referred to as "orthogonal"). Typically, the translation system comprises an orthogonal tRNA (O-tRNA) and an orthogonal aminoacyl tRNA synthetase (O-RS). Typically, the O-RS preferentially aminoacylates the O-tRNA with at least one non-naturally occurring amino acid in the

translation system and the O-tRNA recognizes at least one selector codon that is not recognized by other tRNAs in the system. The translation system thus inserts the non-naturally-encoded amino acid into a protein produced in the system, in response to an encoded selector codon, thereby "substituting" an amino acid into a position in the encoded polypeptide.

[215] A wide variety of orthogonal tRNAs and aminoacyl tRNA synthetases have been described in the art for inserting particular synthetic amino acids into polypeptides, and are generally suitable for use in the present invention. For example, keto-specific O-tRNA/aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases are described in Wang, L., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 100:56-61 (2003) and Zhang, Z. *et al.*, *Biochem.* 42(22):6735-6746 (2003). Exemplary O-RS, or portions thereof, are encoded by polynucleotide sequences and include amino acid sequences disclosed in U.S. Patent Application Publications 2003/0082575 and 2003/0108885, each incorporated herein by reference. Corresponding O-tRNA molecules for use with the O-RSs are also described in U.S. Patent Application Publications 2003/0082575 (Serial No. 10/126,927) and 2003/0108885 (Serial No. 10/126,931) which are incorporated by reference herein.

[216] An example of an azide-specific O-tRNA/aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase system is described in Chin, J. W., *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 124:9026-9027 (2002). Exemplary O-RS sequences for *p*-azido-L-Phe include, but are not limited to, nucleotide sequences SEQ ID NOs: 14-16 and 29-32 and amino acid sequences SEQ ID NOs: 46-48 and 61-64 as disclosed in U.S. Patent Application Publication 2003/0108885 (Serial No. 10/126,931) which is incorporated by reference herein. Exemplary O-tRNA sequences suitable for use in the present invention include, but are not limited to, nucleotide sequences SEQ ID NOs: 1-3 as disclosed in U.S. Patent Application Publication 2003/0108885 (Serial No. 10/126,931) which is incorporated by reference herein. Other examples of O-tRNA/aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase pairs specific to particular non-naturally encoded amino acids are described in U.S. Patent Application Publication 2003/0082575 (Serial No. 10/126,927) which is incorporated by reference herein. O-RS and O-tRNA that incorporate both keto- and azide-containing amino acids in *S. cerevisiae* are described in Chin, J. W., *et al.*, *Science* 301:964-967 (2003).

[217] Use of O-tRNA/aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases involves selection of a specific codon which encodes the non-naturally encoded amino acid. While any codon can be used, it is generally desirable to select a codon that is rarely or never used in the cell in which the O-tRNA/aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase is expressed. For example, exemplary codons include

nonsense codon such as stop codons (amber, ochre, and opal), four or more base codons and other natural three-base codons that are rarely or unused.

[218] Specific selector codon(s) can be introduced into appropriate positions in the hIFN polynucleotide coding sequence using mutagenesis methods known in the art (including but not limited to, site-specific mutagenesis, cassette mutagenesis, restriction selection mutagenesis, etc.).

[219] Methods for generating components of the protein biosynthetic machinery, such as O-RSs, O-tRNAs, and orthogonal O-tRNA/O-RS pairs that can be used to incorporate a non-naturally encoded amino acid are described in Wang, L., *et al.*, *Science* 292: 498-500 (2001); Chin, J. W., *et al.*, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 124:9026-9027 (2002); Zhang, Z. *et al.*, *Biochemistry* 42: 6735-6746 (2003). Methods and compositions for the *in vivo* incorporation of non-naturally encoded amino acids are described in U.S. Patent Application Publication 2003/0082575 (Serial No. 10/126,927) which is incorporated by reference herein. Methods for selecting an orthogonal tRNA-tRNA synthetase pair for use in *in vivo* translation system of an organism are also described in U.S. Patent Application Publications 2003/0082575 (Serial No. 10/126,927) and 2003/0108885 (Serial No. 10/126,931) which are incorporated by reference herein.

[220] Methods for producing at least one recombinant orthogonal aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase (O-RS) comprise: (a) generating a library of (optionally mutant) RSs derived from at least one aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase (RS) from a first organism, including but not limited to, a prokaryotic organism, such as *Methanococcus jannaschii*, *Methanobacterium thermoautotrophicum*, *Halobacterium*, *Escherichia coli*, *A. fulgidus*, *P. furiosus*, *P. horikoshii*, *A. pernix*, *T. thermophilus*, or the like, or a eukaryotic organism; (b) selecting (and/or screening) the library of RSs (optionally mutant RSs) for members that aminoacylate an orthogonal tRNA (O-tRNA) in the presence of a non-naturally encoded amino acid and a natural amino acid, thereby providing a pool of active (optionally mutant) RSs; and/or, (c) selecting (optionally through negative selection) the pool for active RSs (including but not limited to, mutant RSs) that preferentially aminoacylate the O-tRNA in the absence of the non-naturally encoded amino acid, thereby providing the at least one recombinant O-RS; wherein the at least one recombinant O-RS preferentially aminoacylates the O-tRNA with the non-naturally encoded amino acid.

[221] In one embodiment, the RS is an inactive RS. The inactive RS can be generated by mutating an active RS. For example, the inactive RS can be generated by mutating at least about 1, at least about 2, at least about 3, at least about 4, at least about 5, at

least about 6, or at least about 10 or more amino acids to different amino acids, including but not limited to, alanine.

[222] Libraries of mutant RSs can be generated using various techniques known in the art, including but not limited to rational design based on protein three dimensional RS structure, or mutagenesis of RS nucleotides in a random or rational design technique. For example, the mutant RSs can be generated by site-specific mutations, random mutations, diversity generating recombination mutations, chimeric constructs, rational design and by other methods described herein or known in the art.

[223] In one embodiment, selecting (and/or screening) the library of RSs (optionally mutant RSs) for members that are active, including but not limited to, that aminoacylate an orthogonal tRNA (O-tRNA) in the presence of a non-naturally encoded amino acid and a natural amino acid, includes: introducing a positive selection or screening marker, including but not limited to, an antibiotic resistance gene, or the like, and the library of (optionally mutant) RSs into a plurality of cells, wherein the positive selection and/or screening marker comprises at least one selector codon, including but not limited to, an amber, ochre, or opal codon; growing the plurality of cells in the presence of a selection agent; identifying cells that survive (or show a specific response) in the presence of the selection and/or screening agent by suppressing the at least one selector codon in the positive selection or screening marker, thereby providing a subset of positively selected cells that contains the pool of active (optionally mutant) RSs. Optionally, the selection and/or screening agent concentration can be varied.

[224] In one aspect, the positive selection marker is a chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (CAT) gene and the selector codon is an amber stop codon in the CAT gene. Optionally, the positive selection marker is a β -lactamase gene and the selector codon is an amber stop codon in the β -lactamase gene. In another aspect the positive screening marker comprises a fluorescent or luminescent screening marker or an affinity based screening marker (including but not limited to, a cell surface marker).

[225] In one embodiment, negatively selecting or screening the pool for active RSs (optionally mutants) that preferentially aminoacylate the O-tRNA in the absence of the non-naturally encoded amino acid includes: introducing a negative selection or screening marker with the pool of active (optionally mutant) RSs from the positive selection or screening into a plurality of cells of a second organism, wherein the negative selection or screening marker comprises at least one selector codon (including but not limited to, an antibiotic resistance

gene, including but not limited to, a chloramphenicol acetyltransferase (CAT) gene); and, identifying cells that survive or show a specific screening response in a first medium supplemented with the non-naturally encoded amino acid and a screening or selection agent, but fail to survive or to show the specific response in a second medium not supplemented with the non-naturally encoded amino acid and the selection or screening agent, thereby providing surviving cells or screened cells with the at least one recombinant O-RS. For example, a CAT identification protocol optionally acts as a positive selection and/or a negative screening in determination of appropriate O-RS recombinants. For instance, a pool of clones is optionally replicated on growth plates containing CAT (which comprises at least one selector codon) either with or without one or more non-naturally encoded amino acid. Colonies growing exclusively on the plates containing non-naturally encoded amino acids are thus regarded as containing recombinant O-RS. In one aspect, the concentration of the selection (and/or screening) agent is varied. In some aspects the first and second organisms are different. Thus, the first and/or second organism optionally comprises: a prokaryote, a eukaryote, a mammal, an *Escherichia coli*, a fungi, a yeast, an archaeobacterium, a eubacterium, a plant, an insect, a protist, etc. In other embodiments, the screening marker comprises a fluorescent or luminescent screening marker or an affinity based screening marker.

[226] In another embodiment, screening or selecting (including but not limited to, negatively selecting) the pool for active (optionally mutant) RSs includes: isolating the pool of active mutant RSs from the positive selection step (b); introducing a negative selection or screening marker, wherein the negative selection or screening marker comprises at least one selector codon (including but not limited to, a toxic marker gene, including but not limited to, a ribonuclease barnase gene, comprising at least one selector codon), and the pool of active (optionally mutant) RSs into a plurality of cells of a second organism; and identifying cells that survive or show a specific screening response in a first medium not supplemented with the non-naturally encoded amino acid, but fail to survive or show a specific screening response in a second medium supplemented with the non-naturally encoded amino acid, thereby providing surviving or screened cells with the at least one recombinant O-RS, wherein the at least one recombinant O-RS is specific for the non-naturally encoded amino acid. In one aspect, the at least one selector codon comprises about two or more selector codons. Such embodiments optionally can include wherein the at least one selector codon comprises two or more selector codons, and wherein the first and second organism are different (including but not limited to, each organism is optionally, including but not limited

to, a prokaryote, a eukaryote, a mammal, an *Escherichia coli*, a fungi, a yeast, an archaeobacteria, a eubacteria, a plant, an insect, a protist, etc.). Also, some aspects include wherein the negative selection marker comprises a ribonuclease barnase gene (which comprises at least one selector codon). Other aspects include wherein the screening marker
 5 optionally comprises a fluorescent or luminescent screening marker or an affinity based screening marker. In the embodiments herein, the screenings and/or selections optionally include variation of the screening and/or selection stringency.

[227] In one embodiment, the methods for producing at least one recombinant orthogonal aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase (O-RS) can further comprise: (d) isolating the at least
 10 one recombinant O-RS; (e) generating a second set of O-RS (optionally mutated) derived from the at least one recombinant O-RS; and, (f) repeating steps (b) and (c) until a mutated O-RS is obtained that comprises an ability to preferentially aminoacylate the O-tRNA. Optionally, steps (d)-(f) are repeated, including but not limited to, at least about two times. In one aspect, the second set of mutated O-RS derived from at least one recombinant O-RS can
 15 be generated by mutagenesis, including but not limited to, random mutagenesis, site-specific mutagenesis, recombination or a combination thereof.

[228] The stringency of the selection/screening steps, including but not limited to, the positive selection/screening step (b), the negative selection/screening step (c) or both the positive and negative selection/screening steps (b) and (c), in the above-described methods,
 20 optionally includes varying the selection/screening stringency. In another embodiment, the positive selection/screening step (b), the negative selection/screening step (c) or both the positive and negative selection/screening steps (b) and (c) comprise using a reporter, wherein the reporter is detected by fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS) or wherein the reporter is detected by luminescence. Optionally, the reporter is displayed on a cell surface, on a
 25 phage display or the like and selected based upon affinity or catalytic activity involving the non-naturally encoded amino acid or an analogue. In one embodiment, the mutated synthetase is displayed on a cell surface, on a phage display or the like.

[229] Methods for producing a recombinant orthogonal tRNA (O-tRNA) include: (a) generating a library of mutant tRNAs derived from at least one tRNA, including but not
 30 limited to, a suppressor tRNA, from a first organism; (b) selecting (including but not limited to, negatively selecting) or screening the library for (optionally mutant) tRNAs that are aminoacylated by an aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase (RS) from a second organism in the absence of a RS from the first organism, thereby providing a pool of tRNAs (optionally mutant); and, (c) selecting or screening the pool of tRNAs (optionally mutant) for members

that are aminoacylated by an introduced orthogonal RS (O-RS), thereby providing at least one recombinant O-tRNA; wherein the at least one recombinant O-tRNA recognizes a selector codon and is not efficiency recognized by the RS from the second organism and is preferentially aminoacylated by the O-RS. In some embodiments the at least one tRNA is a suppressor tRNA and/or comprises a unique three base codon of natural and/or unnatural bases, or is a nonsense codon, a rare codon, an unnatural codon, a codon comprising at least 4 bases, an amber codon, an ochre codon, or an opal stop codon. In one embodiment, the recombinant O-tRNA possesses an improvement of orthogonality. It will be appreciated that in some embodiments, O-tRNA is optionally imported into a first organism from a second organism without the need for modification. In various embodiments, the first and second organisms are either the same or different and are optionally chosen from, including but not limited to, prokaryotes (including but not limited to, *Methanococcus jannaschii*, *Methanobacterium thermoautotrophicum*, *Escherichia coli*, *Halobacterium*, etc.), eukaryotes, mammals, fungi, yeasts, archaeobacteria, eubacteria, plants, insects, protists, etc. Additionally, the recombinant tRNA is optionally aminoacylated by a non-naturally encoded amino acid, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino acid is biosynthesized in vivo either naturally or through genetic manipulation. The non-naturally encoded amino acid is optionally added to a growth medium for at least the first or second organism.

[230] In one aspect, selecting (including but not limited to, negatively selecting) or screening the library for (optionally mutant) tRNAs that are aminoacylated by an aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase (step (b)) includes: introducing a toxic marker gene, wherein the toxic marker gene comprises at least one of the selector codons (or a gene that leads to the production of a toxic or static agent or a gene essential to the organism wherein such marker gene comprises at least one selector codon) and the library of (optionally mutant) tRNAs into a plurality of cells from the second organism; and, selecting surviving cells, wherein the surviving cells contain the pool of (optionally mutant) tRNAs comprising at least one orthogonal tRNA or nonfunctional tRNA. For example, surviving cells can be selected by using a comparison ratio cell density assay.

[231] In another aspect, the toxic marker gene can include two or more selector codons. In another embodiment of the methods, the toxic marker gene is a ribonuclease barnase gene, where the ribonuclease barnase gene comprises at least one amber codon. Optionally, the ribonuclease barnase gene can include two or more amber codons.

[232] In one embodiment, selecting or screening the pool of (optionally mutant) tRNAs for members that are aminoacylated by an introduced orthogonal RS (O-RS) can

include: introducing a positive selection or screening marker gene, wherein the positive marker gene comprises a drug resistance gene (including but not limited to, β -lactamase gene, comprising at least one of the selector codons, such as at least one amber stop codon) or a gene essential to the organism, or a gene that leads to detoxification of a toxic agent, along with the O-RS, and the pool of (optionally mutant) tRNAs into a plurality of cells from the second organism; and, identifying surviving or screened cells grown in the presence of a selection or screening agent, including but not limited to, an antibiotic, thereby providing a pool of cells possessing the at least one recombinant tRNA, where the at least recombinant tRNA is aminoacylated by the O-RS and inserts an amino acid into a translation product encoded by the positive marker gene, in response to the at least one selector codons. In another embodiment, the concentration of the selection and/or screening agent is varied.

[233] Methods for generating specific O-tRNA/O-RS pairs are provided. Methods include: (a) generating a library of mutant tRNAs derived from at least one tRNA from a first organism; (b) negatively selecting or screening the library for (optionally mutant) tRNAs that are aminoacylated by an aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase (RS) from a second organism in the absence of a RS from the first organism, thereby providing a pool of (optionally mutant) tRNAs; (c) selecting or screening the pool of (optionally mutant) tRNAs for members that are aminoacylated by an introduced orthogonal RS (O-RS), thereby providing at least one recombinant O-tRNA. The at least one recombinant O-tRNA recognizes a selector codon and is not efficiency recognized by the RS from the second organism and is preferentially aminoacylated by the O-RS. The method also includes (d) generating a library of (optionally mutant) RSs derived from at least one aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase (RS) from a third organism; (e) selecting or screening the library of mutant RSs for members that preferentially aminoacylate the at least one recombinant O-tRNA in the presence of a non-naturally encoded amino acid and a natural amino acid, thereby providing a pool of active (optionally mutant) RSs; and, (f) negatively selecting or screening the pool for active (optionally mutant) RSs that preferentially aminoacylate the at least one recombinant O-tRNA in the absence of the non-naturally encoded amino acid, thereby providing the at least one specific O-tRNA/O-RS pair, wherein the at least one specific O-tRNA/O-RS pair comprises at least one recombinant O-RS that is specific for the non-naturally encoded amino acid and the at least one recombinant O-tRNA. Specific O-tRNA/O-RS pairs produced by the methods are included. For example, the specific O-tRNA/O-RS pair can include, including but not limited to, a mutRNATyr-mutTyrRS pair, such as a mutRNATyr-SS12TyrRS pair, a mutRNALeu-

AMBX-0019.00US

mutLeuRS pair, a mutRNAThr-mutThrRS pair, a mutRNAGlu-mutGluRS pair, or the like. Additionally, such methods include wherein the first and third organism are the same (including but not limited to, *Methanococcus jannaschii*).

[234] Methods for selecting an orthogonal tRNA-tRNA synthetase pair for use in an *in vivo* translation system of a second organism are also included in the present invention. The methods include: introducing a marker gene, a tRNA and an aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase (RS) isolated or derived from a first organism into a first set of cells from the second organism; introducing the marker gene and the tRNA into a duplicate cell set from a second organism; and, selecting for surviving cells in the first set that fail to survive in the duplicate cell set or screening for cells showing a specific screening response that fail to give such response in the duplicate cell set, wherein the first set and the duplicate cell set are grown in the presence of a selection or screening agent, wherein the surviving or screened cells comprise the orthogonal tRNA-tRNA synthetase pair for use in the *in vivo* translation system of the second organism. In one embodiment, comparing and selecting or screening includes an *in vivo* complementation assay. The concentration of the selection or screening agent can be varied.

[235] The organisms of the present invention comprise a variety of organism and a variety of combinations. For example, the first and the second organisms of the methods of the present invention can be the same or different. In one embodiment, the organisms are optionally a prokaryotic organism, including but not limited to, *Methanococcus jannaschii*, *Methanobacterium thermoautotrophicum*, *Halobacterium*, *Escherichia coli*, *A. fulgidus*, *P. furiosus*, *P. horikoshii*, *A. pernix*, *T. thermophilus*, or the like. Alternatively, the organisms optionally comprise a eukaryotic organism, including but not limited to, plants (including but not limited to, complex plants such as monocots, or dicots), algae, protists, fungi (including but not limited to, yeast, etc), animals (including but not limited to, mammals, insects, arthropods, etc.), or the like. In another embodiment, the second organism is a prokaryotic organism, including but not limited to, *Methanococcus jannaschii*, *Methanobacterium thermoautotrophicum*, *Halobacterium*, *Escherichia coli*, *A. fulgidus*, *Halobacterium*, *P. furiosus*, *P. horikoshii*, *A. pernix*, *T. thermophilus*, or the like. Alternatively, the second organism can be a eukaryotic organism, including but not limited to, a yeast, a animal cell, a plant cell, a fungus, a mammalian cell, or the like. In various embodiments the first and second organisms are different.

VI. Location of non-naturally-occurring amino acids in hIFN

[236] The present invention contemplates incorporation of one or more non-naturally-occurring amino acids into hIFN. One or more non-naturally-occurring amino acids may be incorporated at a particular position which does not disrupt activity of the polypeptide. This can be achieved by making "conservative" substitutions, including but not limited to, substituting hydrophobic amino acids with hydrophobic amino acids, bulky amino acids for bulky amino acids, hydrophilic amino acids for hydrophilic amino acids) and/or inserting the non-naturally-occurring amino acid in a location that is not required for activity.

[237] Regions of hIFN can be illustrated as follows, wherein the amino acid positions in hIFN are according to SEQ ID NO:2:

1-9 (N-terminus), 10-21 (A helix), 22-39 (region between A helix and B helix), 40-75 (B helix), 76-77 (region between B helix and C helix), 78-100 (C helix), 101-110 (region between C helix and D helix), 111-132 (D helix), 133-136 (region between D and E helix) 137-155 (E helix) 156-165 (C-terminus).

[238] A variety of biochemical and structural approaches can be employed to select the desired sites for substitution with a non-naturally encoded amino acid within the hIFN polypeptide. It is readily apparent to those of ordinary skill in the art that any position of the polypeptide chain is suitable for selection to incorporate a non-naturally encoded amino acid, and selection may be based on rational design or by random selection for any or no particular desired purpose. Selection of desired sites may be for producing an hIFN molecule having any desired property or activity, including but not limited to agonists, super-agonists, inverse agonists, antagonists, receptor binding modulators, receptor activity modulators, dimer or multimer formation, no change to activity or property compared to the native molecule, or manipulating any physical or chemical property of the polypeptide such as solubility, aggregation, or stability. For example, locations in the polypeptide required for biological activity of hIFN can be identified using point mutation analysis, alanine scanning or homolog scanning methods known in the art. See, e.g., DiMarco et al., Biochem Biophys Res Com 202:1445 (1994); Walter et al., Cancer Biotherapy & Radiopharm. 13:143 (1998); Runkel et al., J.B.C. 273:8003 (1998). Residues other than those identified as critical to biological activity by alanine or homolog scanning mutagenesis may be good candidates for substitution with a non-naturally encoded amino acid depending on the desired activity sought for the polypeptide. Alternatively, the sites identified as critical to biological activity may also be good candidates for substitution with a non-naturally encoded amino acid, again depending on the desired activity sought for the polypeptide. Another alternative would be to simply

make serial substitutions in each position on the polypeptide chain with a non-naturally encoded amino acid and observe the effect on the activities of the polypeptide. It is readily apparent to those of ordinary skill in the art that any means, technique, or method for selecting a position for substitution with a non-natural amino acid into any polypeptide is suitable for use in the present invention.

[239] The structure and activity of naturally-occurring mutants of hIFN that contain deletions can also be examined to determine regions of the protein that are likely to be tolerant of substitution with a non-naturally encoded amino acid. *See, e.g.*, SEQ ID NO:2, 3, 28 or 29 for sequences of such variants. Once residues that are likely to be intolerant to substitution with non-naturally encoded amino acids have been eliminated, the impact of proposed substitutions at each of the remaining positions can be examined from the three-dimensional structure of hIFN and its binding proteins. X-ray crystallographic and NMR structures of hIFN are available in the Protein Data Bank (PDB, www.rcsb.org with PDB ID's: 1CD9, 1PGR, 1RHG, 1GNC), a centralized database containing three-dimensional structural data of large molecules of proteins and nucleic acids, as well as in U.S. Patent No., 5,602,232; 5,460,956; 5,441,734; 4,672,108;, which are incorporated by reference herein. Thus, those of skill in the art can readily identify amino acid positions that can be substituted with non-naturally encoded amino acids.

[240] In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acid positioned in a region of the protein that does not disrupt the helices or beta sheet secondary structure of IFN. In some embodiments, the one or more non-naturally encoded amino acid are incorporated or substituted in one or more of the following regions corresponding to secondary structures in IFN wherein the amino acid positions in hIFN are according to SEQ ID NO:2:

1-9 (N-terminus), 10-21 (A helix), 22-39 (region between A helix and B helix), 40-75 (B helix), 76-77 (region between B helix and C helix), 78-100 (C helix), 101-110 (region between C helix and D helix), 111-132 (D helix), 133-136 (region between D and E helix) 137-155 (E helix) 156-165 (C-terminus).

[241] In some embodiments, the one or more non-naturally encoded amino acids are incorporated in one of the following positions in IFN: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120, 121, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163,

164, 165 (as in SEQ ID NO:2, and the corresponding amino acids in other IFN's). In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 100, 106, 107, 108, 111, 113, 114. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 41, 45, 46, 48, 49. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 61, 64, 65, 101, 103, 110, 117, 120, 121, 149. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 6, 9, 12, 13, 16, 96, 156, 159, 160, 161, 162. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109, 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165. In some embodiments, the non-naturally occurring amino acid at these or other positions is linked to a water soluble molecule, including but not limited to positions: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120, 121, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165. In some embodiments, the water soluble polymer is coupled at one or more acid positions: 6, 9, 13, 16, 41, 45, 46, 48, 49, 61, 65, 96, 100, 101, 103, 106, 107, 108, 110, 111, 113, 114, 117, 120, 149, 156, 159, 160, 161 and 162 (SEQ ID NO:2, or the corresponding amino acid in SEQ ID NO:3, 1, or any other IFN polypeptide). In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions providing an antagonist: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109, 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165.

[242] Exemplary sites of incorporation of a non-naturally encoded amino acid include, but are not limited to, those that are excluded from potential receptor binding regions, may be fully or partially solvent exposed, have minimal or no hydrogen-bonding interactions with nearby residues, may be minimally exposed to nearby reactive residues, and may be in regions that are highly flexible (including but not limited to, C-D loop) or

structurally rigid (including but not limited to, B helix) as predicted by the three-dimensional crystal structure of hIFN with its receptor.

[243] A wide variety of non-naturally encoded amino acids can be substituted for, or incorporated into, a given position in hIFN. In general, a particular non-naturally encoded amino acid is selected for incorporation based on an examination of the three dimensional crystal structure of hIFN with its receptor, a preference for conservative substitutions (i.e., aryl-based non-naturally encoded amino acids, such as p-acetylphenylalanine or O-propargyltyrosine substituting for Phe, Tyr or Trp), and the specific conjugation chemistry that one desires to introduce into the hIFN polypeptide (including but not limited to, the introduction of 4-azidophenylalanine if one wants to effect a Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition with a water soluble polymer bearing an alkyne moiety or a amide bond formation with a water soluble polymer that bears an aryl ester that, in turn, incorporates a phosphine moiety).

[244] In one embodiment, the method further includes incorporating into the protein the unnatural amino acid, where the unnatural amino acid comprises a first reactive group; and contacting the protein with a molecule (including but not limited to, a dye, a polymer, including but not limited to, a derivative of polyethylene glycol, a photocrosslinker, a cytotoxic compound, an affinity label, a derivative of biotin, a resin, a second protein or polypeptide, a metal chelator, a cofactor, a fatty acid, a carbohydrate, a polynucleotide (including but not limited to, DNA, RNA, etc.), etc.) that comprises a second reactive group.

The first reactive group reacts with the second reactive group to attach the molecule to the unnatural amino acid through a [3+2] cycloaddition. In one embodiment, the first reactive group is an alkynyl or azido moiety and the second reactive group is an azido or alkynyl moiety. For example, the first reactive group is the alkynyl moiety (including but not limited to, in unnatural amino acid p-propargyloxyphenylalanine) and the second reactive group is the azido moiety. In another example, the first reactive group is the azido moiety (including but not limited to, in the unnatural amino acid p-azido-L-phenylalanine) and the second reactive group is the alkynyl moiety.

[245] In some cases, the non-naturally encoded amino acid substitution(s) or incorporation(s) will be combined with other additions, substitutions, or deletions within the hIFN polypeptide to affect other biological traits of hIFN. In some cases, the other additions, substitutions or deletions may increase the stability (including but not limited to, resistance to proteolytic degradation) of the hIFN polypeptide or increase affinity of the hIFN polypeptide for a IFN receptor. In some cases, the other additions, substitutions or deletions may increase the solubility (including but not limited to, when expressed in E. coli or other host cells) of

the hIFN polypeptide. In some embodiments sites are selected for substitution with a naturally encoded or non-naturally encoded amino acid in addition to another site for incorporation of a non-naturally encoded amino acid for the purpose of increasing hIFN solubility following expression in *E. coli* recombinant host cells. In some embodiments, the hIFN polypeptides comprise another addition, substitution, or deletion that modulates affinity for the hIFN receptor, modulates (including but not limited to, increases or decreases) receptor dimerization, stabilizes receptor dimers, modulates circulating half-life, modulates release or bio-availability, facilitates purification, or improves or alters a particular route of administration. Similarly, hIFN polypeptides can comprise protease cleavage sequences, reactive groups, antibody-binding domains (including but not limited to, FLAG or poly-His) or other affinity based sequences (including but not limited to, FLAG, poly-His, GST, etc.) or linked molecules (including but not limited to, biotin) that improve detection (including but not limited to, GFP), purification or other traits of the polypeptide.

[246] In some embodiments, the substitution of a non-naturally encoded amino acid generates a hIFN antagonist. A subset of exemplary sites for incorporation of a non-naturally encoded amino acid include: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109, 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165 (as in SEQ ID NO:2, and the corresponding amino acids in other IFN's). In other embodiments, the exemplary sites of incorporation of a non-naturally encoded amino acid include residues within the amino terminal region of helix A and a portion of helix C. In another embodiment, substitution of L70 with a non-naturally encoded amino acid such as p-azido-L-phenylalanine or O-propargyl-L-tyrosine. In other embodiments, the above-listed substitutions are combined with additional substitutions that cause the hIFN polypeptide to be a hIFN antagonist. For instance, a non-naturally encoded amino acid is substituted at one of the positions identified herein and a simultaneous substitution is introduced at L70.

[247] In some cases, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, or more amino acids are substituted with a non-naturally-encoded amino acid. In some cases, the hIFN polypeptide further includes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, or more substitutions of a non-naturally encoded amino acid for a naturally-occurring amino acid. For example, in some embodiments, at least two residues in the following regions of hIFN are substituted with a non-naturally encoded amino acid: 1-9 (N-terminus), 10-21 (A helix), 22-39 (region between A helix and B helix), 40-75 (B helix), 76-77 (region between B helix and C helix), 78-100 (C helix), 101-110 (region between C helix and D helix), 111-132 (D helix), 133-136 (region between D and E helix) 137-155 (E helix) 156-165 (C-terminus). In some cases, the two or more non-naturally

AMBX-0019.00US

encoded residues are linked to one or more lower molecular weight linear or branched PEGs (for example approximately 5-20 kDa in mass may be used), thereby enhancing binding affinity and comparable serum half-life relative to the species attached to a single, higher molecular weight PEG.

5 [248] Preferred sites for incorporation of two or more non-naturally encoded amino acids include combinations of the following residues: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120, 121, 124, 125, 127,
10 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165.

VII. Expression in Non-eukaryotes and Eukaryotes

[249] To obtain high level expression of a cloned hIFN polynucleotide, one typically
15 subclones polynucleotides encoding a hIFN polypeptide of the invention into an expression vector that contains a strong promoter to direct transcription, a transcription/translation terminator, and if for a nucleic acid encoding a protein, a ribosome binding site for translational initiation. Suitable bacterial promoters are well known in the art and described, e.g., in Sambrook *et al.* and Ausubel *et al.*

20 [250] Bacterial expression systems for expressing hIFN polypeptides of the invention are available in, including but not limited to, *E. coli*, *Bacillus sp.*, and *Salmonella* (Palva *et al.*, *Gene* 22:229-235 (1983); Mosbach *et al.*, *Nature* 302:543-545 (1983). Kits for such expression systems are commercially available. Eukaryotic expression systems for mammalian cells, yeast, and insect cells are well known in the art and are also commercially
25 available. In cases where orthogonal tRNAs and amino acyl tRNA synthetases (described above) are used to express the hIFN polypeptides of the invention, host cells for expression are selected based on their ability to use the orthogonal components. Exemplary host cells include Gram-positive bacteria (including but not limited to *B. brevis* or *B. subtilis*, *Pseudomonas* or *Streptomyces*) and Gram-negative bacteria (*E. coli*), as well as yeast and
30 other eukaryotic cells. Cells comprising O-tRNA/O-RS pairs can be used as described herein.

[251] A eukaryotic host cell or non-eukaryotic host cell of the present invention provides the ability to synthesize proteins that comprise unnatural amino acids in large useful quantities. In one aspect, the composition optionally includes, including but not limited to, at

AMBX-0019.00US

least 10 micrograms, at least 50 micrograms, at least 75 micrograms, at least 100 micrograms, at least 200 micrograms, at least 250 micrograms, at least 500 micrograms, at least 1 milligram, at least 10 milligrams, at least 100 milligrams, at least one gram, or more of the protein that comprises an unnatural amino acid, or an amount that can be achieved with in vivo protein production methods (details on recombinant protein production and purification are provided herein). In another aspect, the protein is optionally present in the composition at a concentration of, including but not limited to, at least 10 micrograms of protein per liter, at least 50 micrograms of protein per liter, at least 75 micrograms of protein per liter, at least 100 micrograms of protein per liter, at least 200 micrograms of protein per liter, at least 250 micrograms of protein per liter, at least 500 micrograms of protein per liter, at least 1 milligram of protein per liter, or at least 10 milligrams of protein per liter or more, in, including but not limited to, a cell lysate, a buffer, a pharmaceutical buffer, or other liquid suspension (including but not limited to, in a volume of, including but not limited to, anywhere from about 1 nl to about 100 L). The production of large quantities (including but not limited to, greater than that typically possible with other methods, including but not limited to, in vitro translation) of a protein in a eukaryotic cell including at least one unnatural amino acid is a feature of the invention.

[252] A eukaryotic host cell or non-eukaryotic host cell of the present invention provides the ability to biosynthesize proteins that comprise unnatural amino acids in large useful quantities. For example, proteins comprising an unnatural amino acid can be produced at a concentration of, including but not limited to, at least 10 µg/liter, at least 50 µg/liter, at least 75 µg/liter, at least 100 µg/liter, at least 200 µg/liter, at least 250 µg/liter, or at least 500 µg/liter, at least 1 mg/liter, at least 2 mg/liter, at least 3 mg/liter, at least 4 mg/liter, at least 5 mg/liter, at least 6 mg/liter, at least 7 mg/liter, at least 8 mg/liter, at least 9 mg/liter, at least 10 mg/liter, at least 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 200, 300, 400, 500, 600, 700, 800, 900 mg/liter, 1 g/liter, 5 g/liter, 10 g/liter or more of protein in a cell extract, cell lysate, culture medium, a buffer, and/or the like.

I. Expression Systems, Culture, and Isolation

[253] hIFN may be expressed in any number of suitable expression systems including, for example, yeast, insect cells, mammalian cells, and bacteria. A description of exemplary expression systems is provided below.

[254] Yeast As used herein, the term "yeast" includes any of the various yeasts capable of expressing a gene encoding hIFN. Such yeasts include, but are not limited to,

ascosporogenous yeasts (*Endomycetales*), basidiosporogenous yeasts and yeasts belonging to the Fungi imperfecti (*Blastomycetes*) group. The ascosporogenous yeasts are divided into two families, *Spermophthoraceae* and *Saccharomycetaceae*. The latter is comprised of four subfamilies, *Schizosaccharomycoideae* (e.g., genus *Schizosaccharomyces*), *Nadsonioideae*,
 5 *Lipomycoideae* and *Saccharomycoideae* (e.g., genera *Pichia*, *Kluyveromyces* and *Saccharomyces*). The basidiosporogenous yeasts include the genera *Leucosporidium*, *Rhodospiridium*, *Sporidiobolus*, *Filobasidium*, and *Filobasidiella*. Yeasts belonging to the Fungi Imperfecti (*Blastomycetes*) group are divided into two families, *Sporobolomycetaceae* (e.g., genera *Sporobolomyces* and *Bullera*) and *Cryptococcaceae* (e.g., genus *Candida*).

10 [255] Of particular interest for use with the present invention are species within the genera *Pichia*, *Kluyveromyces*, *Saccharomyces*, *Schizosaccharomyces*, *Hansenula*, *Torulopsis*, and *Candida*, including, but not limited to, *P. pastoris*, *P. guillerimondii*, *S. cerevisiae*, *S. carlsbergensis*, *S. diastaticus*, *S. douglasii*, *S. kluyveri*, *S. norbensis*, *S. oviformis*, *K. lactis*, *K. fragilis*, *C. albicans*, *C. maltosa*, and *H. polymorpha*.

15 [256] The selection of suitable yeast for expression of hIFN is within the skill of one of ordinary skill in the art. In selecting yeast hosts for expression, suitable hosts may include those shown to have, for example, good secretion capacity, low proteolytic activity, and overall robustness. Yeast are generally available from a variety of sources including, but not limited to, the Yeast Genetic Stock Center, Department of Biophysics and Medical Physics,
 20 University of California (Berkeley, CA), and the American Type Culture Collection ("ATCC") (Manassas, VA).

[257] The term "yeast host" or "yeast host cell" includes yeast that can be, or has been, used as a recipient for recombinant vectors or other transfer DNA. The term includes the progeny of the original yeast host cell that has received the recombinant vectors or other
 25 transfer DNA. It is understood that the progeny of a single parental cell may not necessarily be completely identical in morphology or in genomic or total DNA complement to the original parent, due to accidental or deliberate mutation. Progeny of the parental cell that are sufficiently similar to the parent to be characterized by the relevant property, such as the presence of a nucleotide sequence encoding a hIFN, are included in the progeny intended by
 30 this definition.

[258] Expression and transformation vectors, including extrachromosomal replicons or integrating vectors, have been developed for transformation into many yeast hosts. For example, expression vectors have been developed for *S. cerevisiae* (Sikorski et al., GENETICS (1998) 112:19; Ito et al., J. BACTERIOL. (1983) 153:163; Hinnen et al., PROC. NATL. ACAD.

- Sci. USA (1978) 75:1929); *C. albicans* (Kurtz et al., MOL. CELL. BIOL. (1986) 6:142); *C. maltosa* (Kunze et al., J. BASIC MICROBIOL. (1985) 25:141); *H. polymorpha* (Gleeson et al., J. GEN. MICROBIOL. (1986) 132:3459; Roggenkamp et al., MOL. GEN. GENET. (1986) 202:302); *K. fragilis* (Das et al., J. BACTERIOL. (1984) 158:1165); *K. lactis* (De Louvencourt et al., J. BACTERIOL. (1983) 154:737; Van den Berg et al., BIO/TECHNOLOGY (1990) 8:135); *P. guillerimondii* (Kunze et al., J. BASIC MICROBIOL. (1985) 25:141); *P. pastoris* (U.S. Patent Nos. 5,324,639; 4,929,555; and 4,837,148; Cregg et al., MOL. CELL. BIOL. (1985) 5:3376); *Schizosaccharomyces pombe* (Beach and Nurse, NATURE (1981) 300:706); and *Y. lipolytica* (Davidow et al., CURR. GENET. (1985) 10:380 (1985); Gaillardin et al., CURR. GENET. (1985) 10:49); *A. nidulans* (Ballance et al., BIOCHEM. BIOPHYS. RES. COMMUN. (1983) 112:284-89; Tilburn et al., GENE (1983) 26:205-221; and Yelton et al., PROC. NATL. ACAD. SCI. USA (1984) 81:1470-74); *A. niger* (Kelly and Hynes, EMBO J. (1985) 4:475479); *T. reesia* (EP 0 244 234); and filamentous fungi such as, e.g., *Neurospora*, *Penicillium*, *Tolypocladium* (WO 91/00357).
- 15 [259] Control sequences for yeast vectors are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art and include, but are not limited to, promoter regions from genes such as alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) (EP 0 284 044); enolase; glucokinase; glucose-6-phosphate isomerase; glyceraldehydes-3-phosphate-dehydrogenase (GAP or GAPDH); hexokinase; phosphofructokinase; 3-phosphoglycerate mutase; and pyruvate kinase (PyK) (EP 0 329 203). The yeast PHO5 gene, encoding acid phosphatase, also may provide useful promoter sequences (Myanohara et al., PROC. NATL. ACAD. SCI. USA (1983) 80:1). Other suitable promoter sequences for use with yeast hosts may include the promoters for 3-phosphoglycerate kinase (Hitzeman et al., J. BIOL. CHEM. (1980) 255:2073); and other glycolytic enzymes, such as pyruvate decarboxylase, triosephosphate isomerase, and phosphoglucose isomerase (Holland et al., BIOCHEMISTRY (1978) 17:4900; Hess et al., J. ADV. ENZYME REG. (1968) 7:149). Inducible yeast promoters having the additional advantage of transcription controlled by growth conditions may include the promoter regions for alcohol dehydrogenase 2; isocytochrome C; acid phosphatase; metallothionein; glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase; degradative enzymes associated with nitrogen metabolism; and enzymes responsible for maltose and galactose utilization. Suitable vectors and promoters for use in yeast expression are further described in EP 0 073 657.
- 25 [260] Yeast enhancers also may be used with yeast promoters. In addition, synthetic promoters may also function as yeast promoters. For example, the upstream activating sequences (UAS) of a yeast promoter may be joined with the transcription

activation region of another yeast promoter, creating a synthetic hybrid promoter. Examples of such hybrid promoters include the ADH regulatory sequence linked to the GAP transcription activation region. See U.S. Patent Nos. 4,880,734 and 4,876,197. Other examples of hybrid promoters include promoters that consist of the regulatory sequences of the ADH2, GAL4, GAL10, or PHO5 genes, combined with the transcriptional activation region of a glycolytic enzyme gene such as GAP or PyK. See EP 0 164 556. Furthermore, a yeast promoter may include naturally occurring promoters of non-yeast origin that have the ability to bind yeast RNA polymerase and initiate transcription.

[261] Other control elements that may comprise part of the yeast expression vectors include terminators, for example, from GAPDH or the enolase genes (Holland et al., J. BIOL. CHEM. (1981) 256:1385). In addition, the origin of replication from the 2 μ plasmid origin is suitable for yeast. A suitable selection gene for use in yeast is the *trp1* gene present in the yeast plasmid. See Tschemper et al., GENE (1980) 10:157; Kingsman et al., GENE (1979) 7:141. The *trp1* gene provides a selection marker for a mutant strain of yeast lacking the ability to grow in tryptophan. Similarly, Leu2-deficient yeast strains (ATCC 20,622 or 38,626) are complemented by known plasmids bearing the *Leu2* gene.

[262] Methods of introducing exogenous DNA into yeast hosts are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art, and typically include, but are not limited to, either the transformation of spheroplasts or of intact yeast host cells treated with alkali cations. For example, transformation of yeast can be carried out according to the method described in Hsiao et al., PROC. NATL. ACAD. SCI. USA (1979) 76:3829 and Van Solingen et al., J. BACT. (1977) 130:946. However, other methods for introducing DNA into cells such as by nuclear injection, electroporation, or protoplast fusion may also be used as described generally in SAMBROOK ET AL., MOLECULAR CLONING: A LAB. MANUAL (2001). Yeast host cells may then be cultured using standard techniques known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

[263] Other methods for expressing heterologous proteins in yeast host cells are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. See generally U.S. Patent Application No. 20020055169, U.S. Patent Nos. 6,361,969; 6,312,923; 6,183,985; 6,083,723; 6,017,731; 5,674,706; 5,629,203; 5,602,034; and 5,089,398; U.S. Reexamined Patent Nos. RE37,343 and RE35,749; PCT Published Patent Applications WO 99/078621; WO 98/37208; and WO 98/26080; European Patent Applications EP 0 946 736; EP 0 732 403; EP 0 480 480; EP 0 460 071; EP 0 340 986; EP 0 329 203; EP 0 324 274; and EP 0 164 556. See also Gellissen et al., ANTONIE VAN LEEUWENHOEK (1992) 62(1-2):79-93; Romanos et al., YEAST (1992) 8(6):423-488; Goeddel, METHODS IN ENZYMOLOGY (1990) 185:3-7.

[264] The yeast host strains may be grown in fermentors during the amplification stage using standard feed batch fermentation methods well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. The fermentation methods may be adapted to account for differences in a particular yeast host's carbon utilization pathway or mode of expression control. For example, fermentation of a *Saccharomyces* yeast host may require a single glucose feed, complex nitrogen source (e.g., casein hydrolysates), and multiple vitamin supplementation. In contrast, the methylotrophic yeast *P. pastoris* may require glycerol, methanol, and trace mineral feeds, but only simple ammonium (nitrogen) salts for optimal growth and expression. See, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,324,639; Elliott et al., J. PROTEIN CHEM. (1990) 9:95; and Fieschko et al., BIOTECH. BIOENG. (1987) 29:1113.

[265] Such fermentation methods, however, may have certain common features independent of the yeast host strain employed. For example, a growth limiting nutrient, typically carbon, may be added to the fermentor during the amplification phase to allow maximal growth. In addition, fermentation methods generally employ a fermentation medium designed to contain adequate amounts of carbon, nitrogen, basal salts, phosphorus, and other minor nutrients (vitamins, trace minerals and salts, etc.). Examples of fermentation media suitable for use with *Pichia* are described in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,324,639 and 5,231,178.

[266] Baculovirus-Infected Insect Cells The term "insect host" or "insect host cell" refers to a insect that can be, or has been, used as a recipient for recombinant vectors or other transfer DNA. The term includes the progeny of the original insect host cell that has been transfected. It is understood that the progeny of a single parental cell may not necessarily be completely identical in morphology or in genomic or total DNA complement to the original parent, due to accidental or deliberate mutation. Progeny of the parental cell that are sufficiently similar to the parent to be characterized by the relevant property, such as the presence of a nucleotide sequence encoding a hIFN polypeptide, are included in the progeny intended by this definition.

[267] The selection of suitable insect cells for expression of hIFN is well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. Several insect species are well described in the art and are commercially available including *Aedes aegypti*, *Bombyx mori*, *Drosophila melanogaster*, *Spodoptera frugiperda*, and *Trichoplusia ni*. In selecting insect hosts for expression, suitable hosts may include those shown to have, *inter alia*, good secretion capacity, low proteolytic activity, and overall robustness. Insect are generally available from a variety of sources including, but not limited to, the Insect Genetic Stock Center, Department of Biophysics and

AMBX-0019.00US

Medical Physics, University of California (Berkeley, CA); and the American Type Culture Collection ("ATCC") (Manassas, VA).

[268] Generally, the components of a baculovirus-infected insect expression system include a transfer vector, usually a bacterial plasmid, which contains both a fragment of the baculovirus genome, and a convenient restriction site for insertion of the heterologous gene to be expressed; a wild type baculovirus with a sequences homologous to the baculovirus-specific fragment in the transfer vector (this allows for the homologous recombination of the heterologous gene in to the baculovirus genome); and appropriate insect host cells and growth media. The materials, methods and techniques used in constructing vectors, transfecting cells, picking plaques, growing cells in culture, and the like are known in the art and manuals are available describing these techniques.

[269] After inserting the heterologous gene into the transfer vector, the vector and the wild type viral genome are transfected into an insect host cell where the vector and viral genome recombine. The packaged recombinant virus is expressed and recombinant plaques are identified and purified. Materials and methods for baculovirus/insect cell expression systems are commercially available in kit form from, for example, Invitrogen Corp. (Carlsbad, CA). These techniques are generally known to those skilled in the art and fully described in SUMMERS AND SMITH, TEXAS AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION BULLETIN NO. 1555 (1987), herein incorporated by reference. *See also*, RICHARDSON, 39 METHODS IN MOLECULAR BIOLOGY: BACULOVIRUS EXPRESSION PROTOCOLS (1995); AUSUBEL ET AL., CURRENT PROTOCOLS IN MOLECULAR BIOLOGY 16.9-16.11 (1994); KING AND POSSEE, THE BACULOVIRUS SYSTEM: A LABORATORY GUIDE (1992); and O'REILLY ET AL., BACULOVIRUS EXPRESSION VECTORS: A LABORATORY MANUAL (1992).

[270] Indeed, the production of various heterologous proteins using baculovirus/insect cell expression systems is well known in the art. *See, e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 6,368,825; 6,342,216; 6,338,846; 6,261,805; 6,245,528; 6,225,060; 6,183,987; 6,168,932; 6,126,944; 6,096,304; 6,013,433; 5,965,393; 5,939,285; 5,891,676; 5,871,986; 5,861,279; 5,858,368; 5,843,733; 5,762,939; 5,753,220; 5,605,827; 5,583,023; 5,571,709; 5,516,657; 5,290,686; WO 02/06305; WO 01/90390; WO 01/27301; WO 01/05956; WO 00/55345; WO 00/20032 WO 99/51721; WO 99/45130; WO 99/31257; WO 99/10515; WO 99/09193; WO 97/26332; WO 96/29400; WO 96/25496; WO 96/06161; WO 95/20672; WO 93/03173; WO 92/16619; WO 92/03628; WO 92/01801; WO 90/14428; WO 90/10078; WO 90/02566; WO 90/02186; WO 90/01556; WO 89/01038; WO 89/01037; WO 88/07082.

[271] Vectors that are useful in baculovirus/insect cell expression systems are known in the art and include, for example, insect expression and transfer vectors derived from the baculovirus *Autographacalifornica* nuclear polyhedrosis virus (AcNPV), which is a helper-independent, viral expression vector. Viral expression vectors derived from this system usually use the strong viral polyhedrin gene promoter to drive expression of heterologous genes. See generally, Reilly ET AL., BACULOVIRUS EXPRESSION VECTORS: A LABORATORY MANUAL (1992).

[272] Prior to inserting the foreign gene into the baculovirus genome, the above-described components, comprising a promoter, leader (if desired), coding sequence of interest, and transcription termination sequence, are typically assembled into an intermediate transplacement construct (transfer vector). Intermediate transplacement constructs are often maintained in a replicon, such as an extra chromosomal element (e.g., plasmids) capable of stable maintenance in a host, such as bacteria. The replicon will have a replication system, thus allowing it to be maintained in a suitable host for cloning and amplification. More specifically, the plasmid may contain the polyhedrin polyadenylation signal (Miller et al., ANN. REV. MICROBIOL. (1988) 42:177) and a prokaryotic ampicillin-resistance (*amp*) gene and origin of replication for selection and propagation in *E. coli*.

[273] One commonly used transfer vector for introducing foreign genes into AcNPV is pAc373. Many other vectors, known to those of skill in the art, have also been designed including, for example, pVL985, which alters the polyhedrin start codon from ATG to ATT, and which introduces a BamHI cloning site 32 base pairs downstream from the ATT. See Luckow and Summers, 17 VIROLOGY 31 (1989). Other commercially available vectors include, for example, PBlueBac4.5/V5-His; pBlueBacHis2; pMelBac; pBlueBac4.5 (Invitrogen Corp., Carlsbad, CA).

[274] After insertion of the heterologous gene, the transfer vector and wild type baculoviral genome are co-transfected into an insect cell host. Methods for introducing heterologous DNA into the desired site in the baculovirus virus are known in the art. See SUMMERS AND SMITH, TEXAS AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION BULLETIN NO. 1555 (1987); Smith et al., MOL. CELL. BIOL. (1983) 3:2156; Luckow and Summers, VIROLOGY (1989) 17:31. For example, the insertion can be into a gene such as the polyhedrin gene, by homologous double crossover recombination; insertion can also be into a restriction enzyme site engineered into the desired baculovirus gene. See Miller et al., BIOESSAYS (1989) 4:91.

[275] Transfection may be accomplished by electroporation. See TROTTER AND WOOD, 39 METHODS IN MOLECULAR BIOLOGY (1995); Mann and King, J. GEN. VIROL.

(1989) 70:3501. Alternatively, liposomes may be used to transfect the insect cells with the recombinant expression vector and the baculovirus. See, e.g., Liebman et al., BIOTECHNIQUES (1999) 26(1):36; Graves et al., BIOCHEMISTRY (1998) 37:6050; Nomura et al., J. BIOL. CHEM. (1998) 273(22):13570; Schmidt et al., PROTEIN EXPRESSION AND PURIFICATION (1998) 12:323; Siffert et al., NATURE GENETICS (1998) 18:45; TILKINS ET AL., CELL BIOLOGY: A LABORATORY HANDBOOK 145-154 (1998); Cai et al., PROTEIN EXPRESSION AND PURIFICATION (1997) 10:263; Dolphin et al., NATURE GENETICS (1997) 17:491; Kost et al., GENE (1997) 190:139; Jakobsson et al., J. BIOL. CHEM. (1996) 271:22203; Rowles et al., J. BIOL. CHEM. (1996) 271(37):22376; Reversey et al., J. BIOL. CHEM. (1996) 271(39):23607-10; Stanley et al., J. BIOL. CHEM. (1995) 270:4121; Sisk et al., J. VIROL. (1994) 68(2):766; and Peng et al., BIOTECHNIQUES (1993) 14.2:274. Commercially available liposomes include, for example, Cellfectin® and Lipofectin® (Invitrogen, Corp., Carlsbad, CA). In addition, calcium phosphate transfection may be used. See TROTTER AND WOOD, 39 METHODS IN MOLECULAR BIOLOGY (1995); Kitts, NAR (1990) 18(19):5667; and Mann and King, J. GEN. VIROL. (1989) 70:3501.

[276] Baculovirus expression vectors usually contain a baculovirus promoter. A baculovirus promoter is any DNA sequence capable of binding a baculovirus RNA polymerase and initiating the downstream (3') transcription of a coding sequence (e.g., structural gene) into mRNA. A promoter will have a transcription initiation region which is usually placed proximal to the 5' end of the coding sequence. This transcription initiation region typically includes an RNA polymerase binding site and a transcription initiation site. A baculovirus promoter may also have a second domain called an enhancer, which, if present, is usually distal to the structural gene. Moreover, expression may be either regulated or constitutive.

[277] Structural genes, abundantly transcribed at late times in the infection cycle, provide particularly useful promoter sequences. Examples include sequences derived from the gene encoding the viral polyhedron protein (FRIESEN ET AL., *The Regulation of Baculovirus Gene Expression* in THE MOLECULAR BIOLOGY OF BACULOVIRUSES (1986); EP 0 127 839 and 0 155 476) and the gene encoding the p10 protein (Vlak et al., J. GEN. VIROL. (1988) 69:765.

[278] The newly formed baculovirus expression vector is packaged into an infectious recombinant baculovirus and subsequently grown plaques may be purified by techniques known to those skilled in the art. See Miller et al., BIOESSAYS (1989) 4:91;

AMBX-0019.00US

SUMMERS AND SMITH, TEXAS AGRICULTURAL EXPERIMENT STATION BULLETIN NO. 1555 (1987).

[279] Recombinant baculovirus expression vectors have been developed for infection into several insect cells. For example, recombinant baculoviruses have been developed for, *inter alia*, *Aedes aegypti* (ATCC No. CCL-125), *Bombyx mori* (ATCC No. CRL-8910), *Drosophila melanogaster* (ATCC No. 1963), *Spodoptera frugiperda*, and *Trichoplusia ni*. See WO 89/046,699; Wright, NATURE (1986) 321:718; Carbonell et al., J. VIROL. (1985) 56:153; Smith et al., MOL. CELL. BIOL. (1983) 3:2156. See generally, Fraser et al., IN VITRO CELL. DEV. BIOL. (1989) 25:225. More specifically, the cell lines used for baculovirus expression vector systems commonly include, but are not limited to, Sf9 (*Spodoptera frugiperda*) (ATCC No. CRL-1711), Sf21 (*Spodoptera frugiperda*) (Invitrogen Corp., Cat. No. 11497-013 (Carlsbad, CA)), Tri-368 (*Trichopulsia ni*), and High-Five™ BTI-TN-5B1-4 (*Trichopulsia ni*).

[280] Cells and culture media are commercially available for both direct and fusion expression of heterologous polypeptides in a baculovirus/expression, and cell culture technology is generally known to those skilled in the art.

[281] E. Coli Bacterial expression techniques are well known in the art. A wide variety of vectors are available for use in bacterial hosts. The vectors may be single copy or low or high multicopy vectors. Vectors may serve for cloning and/or expression. In view of the ample literature concerning vectors, commercial availability of many vectors, and even manuals describing vectors and their restriction maps and characteristics, no extensive discussion is required here. As is well-known, the vectors normally involve markers allowing for selection, which markers may provide for cytotoxic agent resistance, prototrophy or immunity. Frequently, a plurality of markers are present, which provide for different characteristics.

[282] A bacterial promoter is any DNA sequence capable of binding bacterial RNA polymerase and initiating the downstream (3") transcription of a coding sequence (e.g. structural gene) into mRNA. A promoter will have a transcription initiation region which is usually placed proximal to the 5' end of the coding sequence. This transcription initiation region typically includes an RNA polymerase binding site and a transcription initiation site. A bacterial promoter may also have a second domain called an operator, that may overlap an adjacent RNA polymerase binding site at which RNA synthesis begins. The operator permits negative regulated (inducible) transcription, as a gene repressor protein may bind the operator and thereby inhibit transcription of a specific gene. Constitutive expression may occur in the

absence of negative regulatory elements, such as the operator. In addition, positive regulation may be achieved by a gene activator protein binding sequence, which, if present is usually proximal (5') to the RNA polymerase binding sequence. An example of a gene activator protein is the catabolite activator protein (CAP), which helps initiate transcription of the lac operon in *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) [Raibaud et al., ANNU. REV. GENET. (1984) 18:173]. Regulated expression may therefore be either positive or negative, thereby either enhancing or reducing transcription.

[283] Sequences encoding metabolic pathway enzymes provide particularly useful promoter sequences. Examples include promoter sequences derived from sugar metabolizing enzymes, such as galactose, lactose (*lac*) [Chang et al., NATURE (1977) 198:1056], and maltose. Additional examples include promoter sequences derived from biosynthetic enzymes such as tryptophan (*trp*) [Goeddel et al., NUC. ACIDS RES. (1980) 8:4057; Yelverton et al., NUCL. ACIDS RES. (1981) 9:731; U.S. Pat. No. 4,738,921; IFN Pub. Nos. 036 776 and 121 775]. The β -galactosidase (*bla*) promoter system [Weissmann (1981) "The cloning of interferon and other mistakes." In *Interferon 3* (Ed. I. Gresser)], bacteriophage lambda PL [Shimatake et al., NATURE (1981) 292:128] and T5 [U.S. Pat. No. 4,689,406] promoter systems also provide useful promoter sequences. Preferred methods of the present invention utilize strong promoters, such as the T7 promoter to induce hIFN at high levels. Examples of such vectors are well known in the art and include the pET29 series from Novagen, and the pPOP vectors described in WO99/05297. Such expression systems produce high levels of hIFN in the host without compromising host cell viability or growth parameters.

[284] In addition, synthetic promoters which do not occur in nature also function as bacterial promoters. For example, transcription activation sequences of one bacterial or bacteriophage promoter may be joined with the operon sequences of another bacterial or bacteriophage promoter, creating a synthetic hybrid promoter [U.S. Pat. No. 4,551,433]. For example, the *tac* promoter is a hybrid *trp-lac* promoter comprised of both *trp* promoter and *lac* operon sequences that is regulated by the *lac* repressor [Amann et al., GENE (1983) 25:167; de Boer et al., PROC. NATL. ACAD. SCI. (1983) 80:21]. Furthermore, a bacterial promoter can include naturally occurring promoters of non-bacterial origin that have the ability to bind bacterial RNA polymerase and initiate transcription. A naturally occurring promoter of non-bacterial origin can also be coupled with a compatible RNA polymerase to produce high levels of expression of some genes in prokaryotes. The bacteriophage T7 RNA polymerase/promoter system is an example of a coupled promoter system [Studier et al., J. MOL. BIOL. (1986) 189:113; Tabor et al., Proc Natl. Acad. Sci. (1985) 82:1074]. In addition,

a hybrid promoter can also be comprised of a bacteriophage promoter and an *E. coli* operator region (IFN Pub. No. 267 851).

[285] In addition to a functioning promoter sequence, an efficient ribosome binding site is also useful for the expression of foreign genes in prokaryotes. In *E. coli*, the ribosome binding site is called the Shine-Dalgarno (SD) sequence and includes an initiation codon (ATG) and a sequence 3-9 nucleotides in length located 3-11 nucleotides upstream of the initiation codon [Shine et al., NATURE (1975) 254:34]. The SD sequence is thought to promote binding of mRNA to the ribosome by the pairing of bases between the SD sequence and the 3' end of *E. coli* 16S rRNA [Steitz et al. "Genetic signals and nucleotide sequences in messenger RNA", In Biological Regulation and Development: Gene Expression (Ed. R. F. Goldberger, 1979)]. To express eukaryotic genes and prokaryotic genes with weak ribosome-binding site [Sambrook et al. "Expression of cloned genes in *Escherichia coli*", Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 1989].

[286] The term "bacterial host" or "bacterial host cell" refers to a bacterial that can be, or has been, used as a recipient for recombinant vectors or other transfer DNA. The term includes the progeny of the original bacterial host cell that has been transfected. It is understood that the progeny of a single parental cell may not necessarily be completely identical in morphology or in genomic or total DNA complement to the original parent, due to accidental or deliberate mutation. Progeny of the parental cell that are sufficiently similar to the parent to be characterized by the relevant property, such as the presence of a nucleotide sequence encoding a hIFN, are included in the progeny intended by this definition.

[287] The selection of suitable host bacteria for expression of hIFN is well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. In selecting bacterial hosts for expression, suitable hosts may include those shown to have, *inter alia*, good inclusion body formation capacity, low proteolytic activity, and overall robustness. Bacterial hosts are generally available from a variety of sources including, but not limited to, the Bacterial Genetic Stock Center, Department of Biophysics and Medical Physics, University of California (Berkeley, CA); and the American Type Culture Collection ("ATCC") (Manassas, VA). Industrial/pharmaceutical fermentation generally use bacterial derived from K strains (e.g. W3110) or from bacteria derived from B strains (e.g. BL21). These strains are particularly useful because their growth parameters are extremely well known and robust. In addition, these strains are non-pathogenic, which is commercially important for safety and environmental reasons. In one embodiment of the methods of the present invention, the *E. coli* host is a strain of BL21. In

another embodiment of the methods of the present invention, the *E. coli* host is a protease minus strain including, but not limited to, OMP- and LON-.

[288] Once a recombinant host cell strain has been established (i.e., the expression construct has been introduced into the host cell and host cells with the proper expression construct are isolated), the recombinant host cell strain is cultured under conditions appropriate for production of hIFN. As will be apparent to one of skill in the art, the method of culture of the recombinant host cell strain will be dependent on the nature of the expression construct utilized and the identity of the host cell. Recombinant host strains are normally cultured using methods that are well known to the art. Recombinant host cells are typically cultured in liquid medium containing assimilatable sources of carbon, nitrogen, and inorganic salts and, optionally, containing vitamins, amino acids, growth factors, and other proteinaceous culture supplements well known to the art. Liquid media for culture of host cells may optionally contain antibiotics or anti-fungals to prevent the growth of undesirable microorganisms and/or compounds including, but not limited to, antibiotics to select for host cells containing the expression vector.

[289] Recombinant host cells may be cultured in batch or continuous formats, with either cell harvesting (in the case where hIFN accumulates intracellularly) or harvesting of culture supernatant in either batch or continuous formats. For production in prokaryotic host cells, batch culture and cell harvest are preferred.

[290] The hIFN polypeptides of the present invention are normally purified after expression in recombinant systems. The hIFN may be purified from host cells by a variety of methods known to the art. Normally, hIFN produced in bacterial host cells is poorly soluble or insoluble (in the form of inclusion bodies). In one embodiment of the present invention, amino acid substitutions may readily be made in the hIFN polypeptide that are selected for the purpose of increasing the solubility of the recombinantly produced protein utilizing the methods disclosed herein as well as those known in the art. In the case of insoluble protein, the protein may be collected from host cell lysates by centrifugation and may further be followed by homogenization of the cells. In the case of poorly soluble protein, compounds including, but not limited to, polyethylene imine (PEI) may be added to induce the precipitation of partially soluble protein. The precipitated protein may then be conveniently collected by centrifugation. Recombinant host cells may be disrupted or homogenized to release the inclusion bodies from within the cells using a variety of methods well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. Host cell disruption or homogenization may be performed using well known techniques including, but not limited to, enzymatic cell disruption,

sonication, dounce homogenization, or high pressure release disruption. In one embodiment of the method of the present invention, the high pressure release technique is used to disrupt the *E. coli* host cells to release the inclusion bodies of hIFN. It has been found that yields of insoluble hIFN in the form of inclusion bodies may be increased by utilizing only one
5 passage of the *E. coli* host cells through the homogenizer. When handling inclusion bodies of hIFN, it is advantageous to minimize the homogenization time on repetitions in order to maximize the yield of inclusion bodies without loss due to factors such as solubilization, mechanical shearing or proteolysis.

[291] Insoluble or precipitated hIFN may then be solubilized using any of a number
10 of suitable solubilization agents known to the art. Preferably, hIFN is solubilized with urea or guanidine hydrochloride. The volume of the solubilized hIFN-BP should be minimized so that large batches may be produced using conveniently manageable batch sizes. This factor may be significant in a large-scale commercial setting where the recombinant host may be grown in batches that are thousands of liters in volume. In addition, when manufacturing
15 hIFN in a large-scale commercial setting, in particular for human pharmaceutical uses, the avoidance of harsh chemicals that can damage the machinery and container, or the protein product itself, should be avoided, if possible. It has been shown in the method of the present invention that the milder denaturing agent urea can be used to solubilize the hIFN inclusion bodies in place of the harsher denaturing agent guanidine hydrochloride. The use of urea
20 significantly reduces the risk of damage to stainless steel equipment utilized in the manufacturing and purification process of hIFN while efficiently solubilizing the hIFN inclusion bodies.

[292] When hIFN is produced as a fusion protein, the fusion sequence is preferably removed. Removal of a fusion sequence may be accomplished by enzymatic or chemical
25 cleavage, preferably by enzymatic cleavage. Enzymatic removal of fusion sequences may be accomplished using methods well known to those in the art. The choice of enzyme for removal of the fusion sequence will be determined by the identity of the fusion, and the reaction conditions will be specified by the choice of enzyme as will be apparent to one skilled in the art. The cleaved hIFN is preferably purified from the cleaved fusion sequence
30 by well known methods. Such methods will be determined by the identity and properties of the fusion sequence and the hIFN, as will be apparent to one skilled in the art. Methods for purification may include, but are not limited to, size-exclusion chromatography, hydrophobic interaction chromatography, ion-exchange chromatography or dialysis or any combination thereof.

[293] The hIFN is also preferably purified to remove DNA from the protein solution. DNA may be removed by any suitable method known to the art, such as precipitation or ion exchange chromatography, but is preferably removed by precipitation with a nucleic acid precipitating agent, such as, but not limited to, protamine sulfate. hIFN
5 may be separated from the precipitated DNA using standard well known methods including, but not limited to, centrifugation or filtration. Removal of host nucleic acid molecules is an important factor in a setting where the hIFN is to be used to treat humans and the methods of the present invention reduce host cell DNA to pharmaceutically acceptable levels.

[294] Methods for small-scale or large-scale fermentation can also be used in protein
10 expression, including but not limited to, fermentors, shake flasks, fluidized bed bioreactors, hollow fiber bioreactors, roller bottle culture systems, and stirred tank bioreactor systems. Each of these methods can be performed in a batch, fed-batch, or continuous mode process.

[295] Human IFN polypeptides of the invention can generally be recovered using methods standard in the art. For example, culture medium or cell lysate can be centrifuged or
15 filtered to remove cellular debris. The supernatant may be concentrated or diluted to a desired volume or diafiltered into a suitable buffer to condition the preparation for further purification. Further purification of the hIFN of the present invention include separating deamidated and clipped forms of the hIFN variant from the intact form.

[296] Any of the following exemplary procedures can be employed for purification of
20 a hIFN polypeptides of the invention: affinity chromatography; anion- or cation-exchange chromatography (using, including but not limited to, DEAE SEPHAROSE); chromatography on silica; reverse phase HPLC; gel filtration (using, including but not limited to, SEPHADEX G-75); hydrophobic interaction chromatography; size-exclusion chromatography, metal-chelate chromatography; ultrafiltration/diafiltration; ethanol precipitation; ammonium sulfate
25 precipitation; chromatofocusing; displacement chromatography; electrophoretic procedures (including but not limited to preparative isoelectric focusing), differential solubility (including but not limited to ammonium sulfate precipitation), SDS-PAGE, or extraction.

[297] Proteins of the present invention, including but not limited to, proteins comprising unnatural amino acids, antibodies to proteins comprising unnatural amino acids,
30 binding partners for proteins comprising unnatural amino acids, etc., can be purified, either partially or substantially to homogeneity, according to standard procedures known to and used by those of skill in the art. Accordingly, polypeptides of the invention can be recovered and purified by any of a number of methods well known in the art, including but not limited to, ammonium sulfate or ethanol precipitation, acid or base extraction, column

chromatography, affinity column chromatography, anion or cation exchange chromatography, phosphocellulose chromatography, hydrophobic interaction chromatography, hydroxylapatite chromatography, lectin chromatography, gel electrophoresis and the like. Protein refolding steps can be used, as desired, in making
 5 correctly folded mature proteins. High performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), affinity chromatography or other suitable methods can be employed in final purification steps where high purity is desired. In one embodiment, antibodies made against unnatural amino acids (or proteins comprising unnatural amino acids) are used as purification reagents, including but not limited to, for affinity-based purification of proteins comprising one or more unnatural
 10 amino acid(s). Once purified, partially or to homogeneity, as desired, the polypeptides are optionally used for a wide variety of utilities, including but not limited to, as assay components, therapeutics, prophylaxis, diagnostics, research reagents, and/or as immunogens for antibody production.

[298] In addition to other references noted herein, a variety of purification/protein
 15 folding methods are well known in the art, including, but not limited to, those set forth in R. Scopes, Protein Purification, Springer-Verlag, N.Y. (1982); Deutscher, Methods in Enzymology Vol. 182: Guide to Protein Purification, Academic Press, Inc. N.Y. (1990); Sandana (1997) Bioseparation of Proteins, Academic Press, Inc.; Bollag et al. (1996) Protein Methods, 2nd Edition Wiley-Liss, NY; Walker (1996) The Protein Protocols Handbook
 20 Humana Press, NJ, Harris and Angal (1990) Protein Purification Applications: A Practical Approach IRL Press at Oxford, Oxford, England; Harris and Angal Protein Purification Methods: A Practical Approach IRL Press at Oxford, Oxford, England; Scopes (1993) Protein Purification: Principles and Practice 3rd Edition Springer Verlag, NY; Janson and Ryden (1998) Protein Purification: Principles, High Resolution Methods and Applications,
 25 Second Edition Wiley-VCH, NY; and Walker (1998) Protein Protocols on CD-ROM Humana Press, NJ; and the references cited therein.

[299] One advantage of producing a protein or polypeptide of interest with an
 unnatural amino acid in a eukaryotic host cell or non-eukaryotic host cell is that typically the proteins or polypeptides will be folded in their native conformations. However, in certain
 30 embodiments of the invention, those of skill in the art will recognize that, after synthesis, expression and/or purification, proteins can possess a conformation different from the desired conformations of the relevant polypeptides. In one aspect of the invention, the expressed protein is optionally denatured and then renatured. This is accomplished utilizing methods

known in the art, including but not limited to, by adding a chaperonin to the protein or polypeptide of interest, by solubilizing the proteins in a chaotropic agent such as guanidine HCl, utilizing protein disulfide isomerase, etc.

[300] In general, it is occasionally desirable to denature and reduce expressed polypeptides and then to cause the polypeptides to re-fold into the preferred conformation. For example, guanidine, urea, DTT, DTE, and/or a chaperonin can be added to a translation product of interest. Methods of reducing, denaturing and renaturing proteins are well known to those of skill in the art (see, the references above, and Debinski, et al. (1993) J. Biol. Chem., 268: 14065-14070; Kreitman and Pastan (1993) Bioconjug. Chem., 4: 581-585; and 10 Buchner, et al., (1992) Anal. Biochem., 205: 263-270). Debinski, et al., for example, describe the denaturation and reduction of inclusion body proteins in guanidine-DTE. The proteins can be refolded in a redox buffer containing, including but not limited to, oxidized glutathione and L-arginine. Refolding reagents can be flowed or otherwise moved into contact with the one or more polypeptide or other expression product, or vice-versa.

15 [301] In the case of prokaryotic production of hIFN, the hIFN thus produced may be misfolded and thus lacks or has reduced biological activity. The bioactivity of the protein may be restored by "refolding". In general, misfolded hIFN is refolded by solubilizing (where the hIFN is also insoluble), unfolding and reducing the polypeptide chain using, for example, one or more chaotropic agents (e.g. urea and/or guanidine) and a reducing agent 20 capable of reducing disulfide bonds (e.g. dithiothreitol, DTT or 2-mercaptoethanol, 2-ME). At a moderate concentration of chaotrope, an oxidizing agent is then added (e.g., oxygen, cystine or cystamine), which allows the reformation of disulfide bonds. hIFN may be refolded using standard methods known in the art, such as those described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,511,502, 4,511,503, and 4,512,922. The hIFN may also be cofolded with other proteins to 25 form heterodimers or heteromultimers. After refolding or cofolding, the hIFN is preferably further purified.

[302] General Purification Methods Any one of a variety of isolation steps may be performed on the cell lysate comprising hIFN or on any hIFN mixtures resulting from any isolation steps including, but not limited to, affinity chromatography, ion exchange 30 chromatography, hydrophobic interaction chromatography, gel filtration chromatography, high performance liquid chromatography ("HPLC"), reversed phase-HPLC ("RP-HPLC"), expanded bed adsorption, or any combination and/or repetition thereof and in any appropriate order.

[303] Equipment and other necessary materials used in performing the techniques described herein are commercially available. Pumps, fraction collectors, monitors, recorders, and entire systems are available from, for example, Applied Biosystems (Foster City, CA), Bio-Rad Laboratories, Inc. (Hercules, CA), and Amersham Biosciences, Inc. (Piscataway, NJ). Chromatographic materials including, but not limited to, exchange matrix materials, media, and buffers are also available from such companies.

[304] Equilibration, and other steps in the column chromatography processes described herein such as washing and elution, may be more rapidly accomplished using specialized equipment such as a pump. Commercially available pumps include, but are not limited to, HILOAD® Pump P-50, Peristaltic Pump P-1, Pump P-901, and Pump P-903 (Amersham Biosciences, Piscataway, NJ).

[305] Examples of fraction collectors include RediFrac Fraction Collector, FRAC-100 and FRAC-200 Fraction Collectors, and SUPERFRAC® Fraction Collector (Amersham Biosciences, Piscataway, NJ). Mixers are also available to form pH and linear concentration gradients. Commercially available mixers include Gradient Mixer GM-1 and In-Line Mixers (Amersham Biosciences, Piscataway, NJ).

[306] The chromatographic process may be monitored using any commercially available monitor. Such monitors may be used to gather information like UV, pH, and conductivity. Examples of detectors include Monitor UV-1, UVICORD® S II, Monitor UV-M II, Monitor UV-900, Monitor UPC-900, Monitor pH/C-900, and Conductivity Monitor (Amersham Biosciences, Piscataway, NJ). Indeed, entire systems are commercially available including the various AKTA® systems from Amersham Biosciences (Piscataway, NJ).

[307] In one embodiment of the present invention, for example, the hIFN may be reduced and denatured by first denaturing the resultant purified hIFN in urea, followed by dilution into TRIS buffer containing a reducing agent (such as DTT) at a suitable pH. In another embodiment, the hIFN is denatured in urea in a concentration range of between about 2 M to about 9 M, followed by dilution in TRIS buffer at a pH in the range of about 5.0 to about 8.0. The refolding mixture of this embodiment may then be incubated. In one embodiment, the refolding mixture is incubated at room temperature for four to twenty-four hours. The reduced and denatured hIFN mixture may then be further isolated or purified.

As stated herein, the pH of the first hIFN mixture may be adjusted prior to performing any subsequent isolation steps. In addition, the first hIFN mixture or any subsequent mixture thereof may be concentrated using techniques known in the art. Moreover, the elution buffer comprising the first hIFN mixture or any subsequent mixture thereof may be

exchanged for a buffer suitable for the next isolation step using techniques well known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

[308] Ion Exchange Chromatography In one embodiment, and as an optional, additional step, ion exchange chromatography may be performed on the first hIFN mixture.

- 5 *See generally* ION EXCHANGE CHROMATOGRAPHY: PRINCIPLES AND METHODS (Cat. No. 18-1114-21, Amersham Biosciences (Piscataway, NJ)). Commercially available ion exchange columns include HITRAP[®], HIPREP[®], and HILOAD[®] Columns (Amersham Biosciences, Piscataway, NJ). Such columns utilize strong anion exchangers such as Q SEPHAROSE[®] Fast Flow, Q SEPHAROSE[®] High Performance, and Q SEPHAROSE[®] XL; strong cation
- 10 exchangers such as SP SEPHAROSE[®] High Performance, SP SEPHAROSE[®] Fast Flow, and SP SEPHAROSE[®] XL; weak anion exchangers such as DEAE SEPHAROSE[®] Fast Flow; and weak cation exchangers such as CM SEPHAROSE[®] Fast Flow (Amersham Biosciences, Piscataway, NJ). Cation exchange column chromatography may be performed on the hIFN at any stage of the purification process to isolate substantially purified hIFN. The cation
- 15 exchange chromatography step may be performed using any suitable cation exchange matrix. Useful cation exchange matrices include, but are not limited to, fibrous, porous, non-porous, microgranular, beaded, or cross-linked cation exchange matrix materials. Such cation exchange matrix materials include, but are not limited to, cellulose, agarose, dextran, polyacrylate, polyvinyl, polystyrene, silica, polyether, or composites of any of the foregoing.
- 20 Following adsorption of the hIFN to the cation exchanger matrix, substantially purified hIFN may be eluted by contacting the matrix with a buffer having a sufficiently high pH or ionic strength to displace the hIFN from the matrix. Suitable buffers for use in high pH elution of substantially purified hIFN include, but are not limited to, citrate, phosphate, formate, acetate, HEPES, and MES buffers ranging in concentration from at least about 5 mM to at least about
- 25 100 mM.

- [309]** Reverse-Phase Chromatography RP-HPLC may be performed to purify proteins following suitable protocols that are known to those of ordinary skill in the art. *See, e.g.,* Pearson et al., ANAL BIOCHEM. (1982) 124:217-230 (1982); Rivier et al., J. CHROM. (1983) 268:112-119; Kunitani et al., J. CHROM. (1986) 359:391-402. RP-HPLC may be
- 30 performed on the hIFN to isolate substantially purified hIFN. In this regard, silica derivatized resins with alkyl functionalities with a wide variety of lengths, including, but not limited to, at least about C₃ to at least about C₃₀; at least about C₃ to at least about C₂₀, or at least about C₃ to at least about C₁₈, resins may be used. Alternatively, a polymeric resin may be used. For example, TosoHaas Amberchrome CG1000sd resin may be used, which is a styrene

polymer resin. Cyano or polymeric resins with a wide variety of alkyl chain lengths may also be used. Furthermore, the RP-HPLC column may be washed with a solvent such as ethanol. A suitable elution buffer containing an ion pairing agent and an organic modifier such as methanol, isopropanol, tetrahydrofuran, acetonitrile or ethanol, may be used to elute the hIFN
 5 from the RP-HPLC column. The most commonly used ion pairing agents include, but are not limited to, acetic acid, formic acid, perchloric acid, phosphoric acid, trifluoroacetic acid, heptafluorobutyric acid, triethylamine, tetramethylammonium, tetrabutylammonium, triethylammonium acetate. Elution may be performed using one or more gradients or isocratic conditions, with gradient conditions preferred to reduce the separation time and to
 10 decrease peak width. Another method involves the use of two gradients with different solvent concentration ranges. Examples of suitable elution buffers for use herein may include, but are not limited to, ammonium acetate and acetonitrile solutions.

[310] Hydrophobic Interaction Chromatography Purification Techniques

Hydrophobic interaction chromatography (HIC) may be performed on the hIFN. See
 15 *generally* HYDROPHOBIC INTERACTION CHROMATOGRAPHY HANDBOOK: PRINCIPLES AND METHODS (Cat. No. 18-1020-90, Amersham Biosciences (Piscataway, NJ) which is incorporated by reference herein. Suitable HIC matrices may include, but are not limited to, alkyl- or aryl-substituted matrices, such as butyl-, hexyl-, octyl- or phenyl-substituted matrices including agarose, cross-linked agarose, sepharose, cellulose, silica, dextran,
 20 polystyrene, poly(methacrylate) matrices, and mixed mode resins, including but not limited to, a polyethyleneamine resin or a butyl- or phenyl-substituted poly(methacrylate) matrix. Commercially available sources for hydrophobic interaction column chromatography include, but are not limited to, HITRAP[®], HIPREP[®], and HILOAD[®] columns (Amersham Biosciences, Piscataway, NJ). Briefly, prior to loading, the HIC column may be equilibrated
 25 using standard buffers known to those of ordinary skill in the art, such as an acetic acid/sodium chloride solution or HEPES containing ammonium sulfate. After loading the hIFN, the column may then be washed using standard buffers and conditions to remove unwanted materials but retaining the hIFN on the HIC column. hIFN may be eluted with about 3 to about 10 column volumes of a standard buffer, such as a HEPES buffer containing
 30 EDTA and lower ammonium sulfate concentration than the equilibrating buffer, or an acetic acid/sodium chloride buffer, among others. A decreasing linear salt gradient using, for example, a gradient of potassium phosphate, may also be used to elute the hIFN molecules. The eluant may then be concentrated, for example, by filtration such as diafiltration or ultrafiltration. Diafiltration may be utilized to remove the salt used to elute hIFN.

[311] Other Purification Techniques Yet another isolation step using, for example, gel filtration (GEL FILTRATION: PRINCIPLES AND METHODS (Cat. No. 18-1022-18, Amersham Biosciences, Piscataway, NJ) which is incorporated by reference herein, HPLC, expanded bed adsorption, ultrafiltration, diafiltration, lyophilization, and the like, may be performed on the first hIFN mixture or any subsequent mixture thereof, to remove any excess salts and to replace the buffer with a suitable buffer for the next isolation step or even formulation of the final drug product. The yield of hIFN, including substantially purified hIFN, may be monitored at each step described herein using techniques known to those of ordinary skill in the art. Such techniques may also used to assess the yield of substantially purified hIFN following the last isolation step. For example, the yield of hIFN may be monitored using any of several reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography columns, having a variety of alkyl chain lengths such as cyano RP-HPLC, C₁₈RP-HPLC; as well as cation exchange HPLC and gel filtration HPLC.

[312] Purity may be determined using standard techniques, such as SDS-PAGE, or by measuring hIFN using Western blot and ELISA assays. For example, polyclonal antibodies may be generated against proteins isolated from negative control yeast fermentation and the cation exchange recovery. The antibodies may also be used to probe for the presence of contaminating host cell proteins.

[313] RP-HPLC material Vydac C4 (Vydac) consists of silica gel particles, the surfaces of which carry C4-alkyl chains. The separation of IFN from the proteinaceous impurities is based on differences in the strength of hydrophobic interactions. Elution is performed with an acetonitrile gradient in diluted trifluoroacetic acid. Preparative HPLC is performed using a stainless steel column (filled with 2.8 to 3.2 liter of Vydac C4 silicagel). The Hydroxyapatite Ultrogel eluate is acidified by adding trifluoro-acetic acid and loaded onto the Vydac C4 column. For washing and elution an acetonitrile gradient in diluted trifluoroacetic acid is used. Fractions are collected and immediately neutralized with phosphate buffer. The IFN fractions which are within the IPC limits are pooled.

[314] DEAE Sepharose (Pharmacia) material consists of diethylaminoethyl (DEAE)-groups which are covalently bound to the surface of Sepharose beads. The binding of IFN to the DEAE groups is mediated by ionic interactions. Acetonitrile and trifluoroacetic acid pass through the column without being retained. After these substances have been washed off, trace impurities are removed by washing the column with acetate buffer at a low pH. Then the column is washed with neutral phosphate buffer and IFN is eluted with a buffer with increased ionic strength. The column is packed with DEAE Sepharose fast flow. The column

AMBX-0019.00US

volume is adjusted to assure a IFN load in the range of 3-10 mg IFN/ml gel. The column is washed with water and equilibration buffer (sodium/potassium phosphate). The pooled fractions of the HPLC eluate are loaded and the column is washed with equilibration buffer. Then the column is washed with washing buffer (sodium acetate buffer) followed by washing with equilibration buffer. Subsequently, IFN is eluted from the column with elution buffer (sodium chloride, sodium/potassium phosphate) and collected in a single fraction in accordance with the master elution profile. The eluate of the DEAE Sepharose column is adjusted to the specified conductivity. The resulting drug substance is sterile filtered into Teflon bottles and stored at -70°C.

- 10 [315] A wide variety of methods and procedures can be used to assess the yield and purity of a hIFN protein one or more non-naturally encoded amino acids, including but not limited to, the Bradford assay, SDS-PAGE, silver stained SDS-PAGE, coomassie stained SDS-PAGE, mass spectrometry (including but not limited to, MALDI-TOF) and other methods for characterizing proteins known to one skilled in the art.

15

VIII. Expression in Alternate Systems

- [316] Several strategies have been employed to introduce unnatural amino acids into proteins in non-recombinant host cells, mutagenized host cells, or in cell-free systems. These systems are also suitable for use in making the hIFN polypeptides of the present invention.
- 20 Derivatization of amino acids with reactive side-chains such as Lys, Cys and Tyr resulted in the conversion of lysine to N²-acetyl-lysine. Chemical synthesis also provides a straightforward method to incorporate unnatural amino acids. With the recent development of enzymatic ligation and native chemical ligation of peptide fragments, it is possible to make larger proteins. See, e.g., P. E. Dawson and S. B. H. Kent, Annu. Rev. Biochem., 69:923
- 25 (2000). A general in vitro biosynthetic method in which a suppressor tRNA chemically acylated with the desired unnatural amino acid is added to an in vitro extract capable of supporting protein biosynthesis, has been used to site-specifically incorporate over 100 unnatural amino acids into a variety of proteins of virtually any size. See, e.g., V. W. Cornish, D. Mendel and P. G. Schultz, Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl., 1995, 34:621 (1995);
- 30 C.J. Noren, S.J. Anthony-Cahill, M.C. Griffith, P.G. Schultz, *A general method for site-specific incorporation of unnatural amino acids into proteins*, Science 244 182-188 (1989); and, J.D. Bain, C.G. Glabe, T.A. Dix, A.R. Chamberlin, E.S. Diala, *Biosynthetic site-specific incorporation of a non-natural amino acid into a polypeptide*, J. Am. Chem. Soc. 111 8013-

8014 (1989). A broad range of functional groups has been introduced into proteins for studies of protein stability, protein folding, enzyme mechanism, and signal transduction.

[317] An in vivo method, termed selective pressure incorporation, was developed to exploit the promiscuity of wild-type synthetases. See, e.g., N. Budisa, C. Minks, S.

- 5 Alefelder, W. Wenger, F. M. Dong, L. Moroder and R. Huber, FASEB J., 13:41 (1999). An auxotrophic strain, in which the relevant metabolic pathway supplying the cell with a particular natural amino acid is switched off, is grown in minimal media containing limited concentrations of the natural amino acid, while transcription of the target gene is repressed. At the onset of a stationary growth phase, the natural amino acid is depleted and replaced
- 10 with the unnatural amino acid analog. Induction of expression of the recombinant protein results in the accumulation of a protein containing the unnatural analog. For example, using this strategy, o, m and p-fluorophenylalanines have been incorporated into proteins, and exhibit two characteristic shoulders in the UV spectrum which can be easily identified, see, e.g., C. Minks, R. Huber, L. Moroder and N. Budisa, Anal. Biochem., 284:29 (2000);
- 15 trifluoromethionine has been used to replace methionine in bacteriophage T4 lysozyme to study its interaction with chitooligosaccharide ligands by ¹⁹F NMR, see, e.g., H. Duewel, E. Daub, V. Robinson and J. F. Honek, Biochemistry, 36:3404 (1997); and trifluoroleucine has been incorporated in place of leucine, resulting in increased thermal and chemical stability of a leucine-zipper protein. See, e.g., Y. Tang, G. Ghirlanda, W. A. Petka, T. Nakajima, W. F.
- 20 DeGrado and D. A. Tirrell, Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl., 40:1494 (2001). Moreover, selenomethionine and telluromethionine are incorporated into various recombinant proteins to facilitate the solution of phases in X-ray crystallography. See, e.g., W. A. Hendrickson, J. R. Horton and D. M. Lemaster, EMBO J., 9:1665 (1990); J. O. Boles, K. Lewinski, M. Kunkle, J. D. Odom, B. Dunlap, L. Lebioda and M. Hatada, Nat. Struct. Biol., 1:283 (1994);
- 25 N. Budisa, B. Steipe, P. Demange, C. Eckerskorn, J. Kellermann and R. Huber, Eur. J. Biochem., 230:788 (1995); and, N. Budisa, W. Karnbrock, S. Steinbacher, A. Humm, L. Prade, T. Neuefeind, L. Moroder and R. Huber, J. Mol. Biol., 270:616 (1997). Methionine analogs with alkene or alkyne functionalities have also been incorporated efficiently, allowing for additional modification of proteins by chemical means. See, e.g., J. C. M.
- 30 vanHest and D. A. Tirrell, FEBS Lett., 428:68 (1998); J. C. M. van Hest, K. L. Kiick and D. A. Tirrell, J. Am. Chem. Soc., 122:1282 (2000); and, K. L. Kiick and D. A. Tirrell, Tetrahedron, 56:9487 (2000); U.S.Patent No. 6,586,207; U.S.Patent Publication 2002/0042097, which are incorporated by reference herein.

[318] The success of this method depends on the recognition of the unnatural amino acid analogs by aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases, which, in general, require high selectivity to insure the fidelity of protein translation. One way to expand the scope of this method is to relax the substrate specificity of aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases, which has been achieved in a limited number of cases. For example, replacement of Ala²⁹⁴ by Gly in *Escherichia coli* phenylalanyl-tRNA synthetase (PheRS) increases the size of substrate binding pocket, and results in the acylation of tRNA^{Phe} by p-Cl-phenylalanine (p-Cl-Phe). See, M. Ibba, P. Kast and H. Hennecke, Biochemistry, 33:7107 (1994). An *Escherichia coli* strain harboring this mutant PheRS allows the incorporation of p-Cl-phenylalanine or p-Br-phenylalanine in place of phenylalanine. See, e.g., M. Ibba and H. Hennecke, FEBS Lett., 364:272 (1995); and, N. Sharma, R. Furter, P. Kast and D. A. Tirrell, FEBS Lett., 467:37 (2000). Similarly, a point mutation Phe130Ser near the amino acid binding site of *Escherichia coli* tyrosyl-tRNA synthetase was shown to allow azatyrosine to be incorporated more efficiently than tyrosine. See, F. Hamano-Takaku, T. Iwama, S. Saito-Yano, K. Takaku, Y. Monden, M. Kitabatake, D. Soll and S. Nishimura, J. Biol. Chem., 275:40324 (2000).

[319] Another strategy to incorporate unnatural amino acids into proteins in vivo is to modify synthetases that have proofreading mechanisms. These synthetases cannot discriminate and therefore activate amino acids that are structurally similar to the cognate natural amino acids. This error is corrected at a separate site, which deacylates the mischarged amino acid from the tRNA to maintain the fidelity of protein translation. If the proofreading activity of the synthetase is disabled, structural analogs that are misactivated may escape the editing function and be incorporated. This approach has been demonstrated recently with the valyl-tRNA synthetase (ValRS). See, V. Doring, H. D. Mootz, L. A. Nangle, T. L. Hendrickson, V. de Crecy-Lagard, P. Schimmel and P. Marliere, Science, 292:501 (2001). ValRS can misaminoacylate tRNA^{Val} with Cys, Thr, or aminobutyrate (Abu); these noncognate amino acids are subsequently hydrolyzed by the editing domain. After random mutagenesis of the *Escherichia coli* chromosome, a mutant *Escherichia coli* strain was selected that has a mutation in the editing site of ValRS. This edit-defective ValRS incorrectly charges tRNA^{Val} with Cys. Because Abu sterically resembles Cys (–SH group of Cys is replaced with –CH₃ in Abu), the mutant ValRS also incorporates Abu into proteins when this mutant *Escherichia coli* strain is grown in the presence of Abu. Mass spectrometric analysis shows that about 24% of valines are replaced by Abu at each valine position in the native protein.

[320] Solid-phase synthesis and semisynthetic methods have also allowed for the synthesis of a number of proteins containing novel amino acids. For example, see the following publications and references cited within, which are as follows: Crick, F.J.C., Barrett, L. Brenner, S. Watts-Tobin, R. *General nature of the genetic code for proteins. Nature*, 1227-1232 (1961); Hofmann, K., Bohn, H. *Studies on polypeptides. XXXVI. The effect of pyrazole-imidazole replacements on the S-protein activating potency of an S-peptide fragment, J. Am Chem*, 5914-5919 (1966); Kaiser, E.T. *Synthetic approaches to biologically active peptides and proteins including enzymes, Acc Chem Res*, 47-54 (1989); Nakatsuka, T., Sasaki, T., Kaiser, E.T. *Peptide segment coupling catalyzed by the semisynthetic enzyme thiosubtilisin, J Am Chem Soc*, 3808-3810 (1987); Schnolzer, M., Kent, S B H. *Constructing proteins by dovetailing unprotected synthetic peptides: backbone-engineered HIV protease, Science*, 221-225 (1992); Chaiken, I.M. *Semisynthetic peptides and proteins, CRC Crit Rev Biochem*, 255-301 (1981); Offord, R.E. *Protein engineering by chemical means? Protein Eng.*, 151-157 (1987); and, Jackson, D.Y., Burnier, J., Quan, C., Stanley, M., Tom, J., Wells, J.A. *A Designed Peptide Ligase for Total Synthesis of Ribonuclease A with Unnatural Catalytic Residues, Science*, 243 (1994).

[321] Chemical modification has been used to introduce a variety of unnatural side chains, including cofactors, spin labels and oligonucleotides into proteins in vitro. See, e.g., Corey, D.R., Schultz, P.G. *Generation of a hybrid sequence-specific single-stranded deoxyribonuclease, Science*, 1401-1403 (1987); Kaiser, E.T., Lawrence D.S., Rokita, S.E. *The chemical modification of enzymatic specificity, Rev Biochem*, 565-595 (1985); Kaiser, E.T., Lawrence, D.S. *Chemical mutation of enzyme active sites, Science*, 505-511 (1984); Neet, K.E., Nanci A, Koshland, D.E. *Properties of thiol-subtilisin, J Biol. Chem*, 6392-6401 (1968); Polgar, L.B., M.L. *A new enzyme containing a synthetically formed active site. Thiol-subtilisin. J. Am Chem Soc*, 3153-3154 (1966); and, Pollack, S.J., Nakayama, G. Schultz, P.G. *Introduction of nucleophiles and spectroscopic probes into antibody combining sites, Science*, 1038-1040 (1988).

[322] Alternatively, biosynthetic methods that employ chemically modified aminoacyl-tRNAs have been used to incorporate several biophysical probes into proteins synthesized in vitro. See the following publications and references cited within: Brunner, J. *New Photolabeling and crosslinking methods, Annu. Rev Biochem*, 483-514 (1993); and, Krieg, U.C., Walter, P., Hohnson, A.E. *Photocrosslinking of the signal sequence of nascent preprolactin of the 54-kilodalton polypeptide of the signal recognition particle, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci*, 8604-8608 (1986).

[323] Previously, it has been shown that unnatural amino acids can be site-specifically incorporated into proteins in vitro by the addition of chemically aminoacylated suppressor tRNAs to protein synthesis reactions programmed with a gene containing a desired amber nonsense mutation. Using these approaches, one can substitute a number of the common twenty amino acids with close structural homologues, e.g., fluorophenylalanine for phenylalanine, using strains auxotrophic for a particular amino acid. See, e.g., Noren, C.J., Anthony-Cahill, Griffith, M.C., Schultz, P.G. *A general method for site-specific incorporation of unnatural amino acids into proteins*, Science, 244: 182-188 (1989); M.W. Nowak, et al., Science 268:439-42 (1995); Bain, J.D., Glabe, C.G., Dix, T.A., Chamberlin, A.R., Diala, E.S. *Biosynthetic site-specific Incorporation of a non-natural amino acid into a polypeptide*, J. Am Chem Soc, 111:8013-8014 (1989); N. Budisa et al., FASEB J. 13:41-51 (1999); Ellman, J.A., Mendel, D., Anthony-Cahill, S., Noren, C.J., Schultz, P.G. *Biosynthetic method for introducing unnatural amino acids site-specifically into proteins*, Methods in Enz., 301-336 (1992); and, Mendel, D., Cornish, V.W. & Schultz, P.G. *Site-Directed Mutagenesis with an Expanded Genetic Code*, Annu Rev Biophys. Biomol Struct. 24, 435-62 (1995).

[324] For example, a suppressor tRNA was prepared that recognized the stop codon UAG and was chemically aminoacylated with an unnatural amino acid. Conventional site-directed mutagenesis was used to introduce the stop codon TAG, at the site of interest in the protein gene. See, e.g., Sayers, J.R., Schmidt, W. Eckstein, F. 5', 3' *Exonuclease in phosphorothioate-based oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis*, Nucleic Acids Res, 791-802 (1988). When the acylated suppressor tRNA and the mutant gene were combined in an in vitro transcription/translation system, the unnatural amino acid was incorporated in response to the UAG codon which gave a protein containing that amino acid at the specified position. Experiments using [³H]-Phe and experiments with α -hydroxy acids demonstrated that only the desired amino acid is incorporated at the position specified by the UAG codon and that this amino acid is not incorporated at any other site in the protein. See, e.g., Noren, et al, *supra*; Kobayashi et al., (2003) *Nature Structural Biology* 10(6):425-432; and, Ellman, J.A., Mendel, D., Schultz, P.G. *Site-specific incorporation of novel backbone structures into proteins*, Science, 197-200 (1992).

[325] Microinjection techniques have also been use incorporate unnatural amino acids into proteins. See, e.g., M. W. Nowak, P. C. Kearney, J. R. Sampson, M. E. Saks, C. G. Labarca, S. K. Silverman, W. G. Zhong, J. Thorson, J. N. Abelson, N. Davidson, P. G.

- Schultz, D. A. Dougherty and H. A. Lester, Science, 268:439 (1995); and, D. A. Dougherty, Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol., 4:645 (2000). A *Xenopus* oocyte was coinjected with two RNA species made in vitro: an mRNA encoding the target protein with a UAG stop codon at the amino acid position of interest and an amber suppressor tRNA aminoacylated with the desired unnatural amino acid. The translational machinery of the oocyte then inserts the unnatural amino acid at the position specified by UAG. This method has allowed in vivo structure-function studies of integral membrane proteins, which are generally not amenable to in vitro expression systems. Examples include the incorporation of a fluorescent amino acid into tachykinin neurokinin-2 receptor to measure distances by fluorescence resonance energy transfer, see, e.g., G. Turcatti, K. Nemeth, M. D. Edgerton, U. Meseth, F. Talabot, M. Peitsch, J. Knowles, H. Vogel and A. Chollet, J. Biol. Chem., 271:19991 (1996); the incorporation of biotinylated amino acids to identify surface-exposed residues in ion channels, see, e.g., J. P. Gallivan, H. A. Lester and D. A. Dougherty, Chem. Biol., 4:739 (1997); the use of caged tyrosine analogs to monitor conformational changes in an ion channel in real time, see, e.g., J. C. Miller, S. K. Silverman, P. M. England, D. A. Dougherty and H. A. Lester, Neuron, 20:619 (1998); and, the use of alpha hydroxy amino acids to change ion channel backbones for probing their gating mechanisms. See, e.g., P. M. England, Y. Zhang, D. A. Dougherty and H. A. Lester, Cell, 96:89 (1999); and, T. Lu, A. Y. Ting, J. Mainland, L. Y. Jan, P. G. Schultz and J. Yang, Nat. Neurosci., 4:239 (2001).
- 20 [326] The ability to incorporate unnatural amino acids directly into proteins in vivo offers the advantages of high yields of mutant proteins, technical ease, the potential to study the mutant proteins in cells or possibly in living organisms and the use of these mutant proteins in therapeutic treatments. The ability to include unnatural amino acids with various sizes, acidities, nucleophilicities, hydrophobicities, and other properties into proteins can greatly expand our ability to rationally and systematically manipulate the structures of proteins, both to probe protein function and create new proteins or organisms with novel properties. However, the process is difficult, because the complex nature of tRNA-synthetase interactions that are required to achieve a high degree of fidelity in protein translation.
- 25 [327] In one attempt to site-specifically incorporate para-F-Phe, a yeast amber suppressor tRNA^{Phe}CUA /phenylalanyl-tRNA synthetase pair was used in a p-F-Phe resistant, Phe auxotrophic *Escherichia coli* strain. See, e.g., R. Furter, Protein Sci., 7:419 (1998).
- 30 [328] It may also be possible to obtain expression of a hIFN polynucleotide of the present invention using a cell-free (in-vitro) translational system. In these systems, which

can include either mRNA as a template (in-vitro translation) or DNA as a template (combined in-vitro transcription and translation), the in vitro synthesis is directed by the ribosomes. Considerable effort has been applied to the development of cell-free protein expression systems. See, e.g., Kim, D.-M. and J.R. Swartz, *Biotechnology and Bioengineering*, 74 :309-316 (2001); Kim, D.-M. and J.R. Swartz, *Biotechnology Letters*, 22, 1537-1542, (2000); Kim, D.-M., and J.R. Swartz, *Biotechnology Progress*, 16, 385-390, (2000); Kim, D.-M., and J.R. Swartz, *Biotechnology and Bioengineering*, 66, 180-188, (1999); and Patnaik, R. and J.R. Swartz, *Biotechniques* 24, 862-868, (1998); U.S. Patent No. 6,337,191; U.S. Patent Publication No. 2002/0081660; WO 00/55353; WO 90/05785, which are incorporated by reference herein. Another approach that may be applied to the expression of hIFN polypeptides comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid include the mRNA-peptide fusion technique. See, e.g., R. Roberts and J. Szostak, *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. (USA)* 94.12297-12302 (1997); A. Frankel, *et al.*, *Chemistry & Biology* 10, 1043-1050 (2003). In this approach, an mRNA template linked to puromycin is translated into peptide on the ribosome. If one or more tRNA molecules has been modified, non-natural amino acids can be incorporated into the peptide as well. After the last mRNA codon has been read, puromycin captures the C-terminus of the peptide. If the resulting mRNA-peptide conjugate is found to have interesting properties in an in vitro assay, its identity can be easily revealed from the mRNA sequence. In this way, one may screen libraries of hIFN polypeptides comprising one or more non-naturally encoded amino acids to identify polypeptides having desired properties. More recently, in vitro ribosome translations with purified components have been reported that permit the synthesis of peptides substituted with non-naturally encoded amino acids. See, e.g., A. Forster *et al.*, *Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. (USA)* 100 6353 (2003).

IX. Macromolecular Polymers Coupled to hIFN

[329] A wide variety of macromolecular polymers and other molecules can be linked to hIFN polypeptides of the present invention to modulate biological properties of hIFN, and/or provide new biological properties to the hIFN molecule. These macromolecular polymers can be linked to hIFN via a naturally encoded amino acid, via a non-naturally encoded amino acid, or any functional substituent of a natural or non-natural amino acid, or any substituent or functional group added to a natural or non-natural amino acid.

[330] The present invention provides substantially homogenous preparations of polymer:protein conjugates. "Substantially homogenous" as used herein means that polymer:protein conjugate molecules are observed to be greater than half of the total protein.

The polymer:protein conjugate has biological activity and the present "substantially homogenous" PEGylated hIFN preparations provided herein are those which are homogenous enough to display the advantages of a homogenous preparation, e.g., ease in clinical application in predictability of lot to lot pharmacokinetics.

5 [331] One may also choose to prepare a mixture of polymer:protein conjugate molecules, and the advantage provided herein is that one may select the proportion of mono-polymer:protein conjugate to include in the mixture. Thus, if desired, one may prepare a mixture of various proteins with various numbers of polymer moieties attached (i.e., di-, tri-, tetra-, etc.) and combine said conjugates with the mono-polymer:protein conjugate prepared
10 using the methods of the present invention, and have a mixture with a predetermined proportion of mono-polymer:protein conjugates.

[332] The polymer selected may be water soluble so that the protein to which it is attached does not precipitate in an aqueous environment, such as a physiological environment. The polymer may be branched or unbranched. Preferably, for therapeutic use of
15 the end-product preparation, the polymer will be pharmaceutically acceptable.

[333] The proportion of polyethylene glycol molecules to protein molecules will vary, as will their concentrations in the reaction mixture. In general, the optimum ratio (in terms of efficiency of reaction in that there is minimal excess unreacted protein or polymer) may be determined by the molecular weight of the polyethylene glycol selected and on the
20 number of available reactive groups available. As relates to molecular weight, typically the higher the molecular weight of the polymer, the fewer number of polymer molecules which may be attached to the protein. Similarly, branching of the polymer should be taken into account when optimizing these parameters. Generally, the higher the molecular weight (or the more branches) the higher the polymer:protein ratio.

25 [334] As used herein, and when contemplating PEG:hIFN conjugates, the term "therapeutically effective amount" refers to an amount which gives an increase in hematocrit that provides benefit to a patient. The amount will vary from one individual to another and will depend upon a number of factors, including the overall physical condition of the patient and the underlying cause of anemia. For example, a therapeutically effective amount of hIFN
30 for a patient suffering from chronic renal failure is 50 to 150 units/kg three times per week. The amount of hIFN used for therapy gives an acceptable rate of hematocrit increase and maintains the hematocrit at a beneficial level (usually at least about 30% and typically in a range of 30% to 36%). A therapeutically effective amount of the present compositions may

be readily ascertained by one skilled in the art using publicly available materials and procedures.

[335] The water soluble polymer may be any structural form including but not limited to linear, forked or branched. Typically, the water soluble polymer is a poly(alkylene glycol), such as poly(ethylene glycol) (PEG), but other water soluble polymers can also be employed. By way of example, PEG is used to describe certain embodiments of this invention.

[336] PEG is a well-known, water soluble polymer that is commercially available or can be prepared by ring-opening polymerization of ethylene glycol according to methods well known in the art (Sandler and Karo, Polymer Synthesis, Academic Press, New York, Vol. 3, pages 138-161). The term "PEG" is used broadly to encompass any polyethylene glycol molecule, without regard to size or to modification at an end of the PEG, and can be represented as linked to hIFN by the formula:



where n is 2 to 10,000 and X is H or a terminal modification, including but not limited to, a C₁₋₄ alkyl.

[337] In some cases, a PEG used in the invention terminates on one end with hydroxy or methoxy, i.e., X is H or CH₃ ("methoxy PEG"). Alternatively, the PEG can terminate with a reactive group, thereby forming a bifunctional polymer. Typical reactive groups can include those reactive groups that are commonly used to react with the functional groups found in the 20 common amino acids (including but not limited to, maleimide groups, activated carbonates (including but not limited to, p-nitrophenyl ester), activated esters (including but not limited to, N-hydroxysuccinimide, p-nitrophenyl ester) and aldehydes) as well as functional groups that are inert to the 20 common amino acids but that react specifically with complementary functional groups present in non-naturally encoded amino acids (including but not limited to, azide groups, alkyne groups). It is noted that the other end of the PEG, which is shown in the above formula by Y, will attach either directly or indirectly to a hIFN polypeptide via a naturally-occurring or non-naturally encoded amino acid. For instance, Y may be an amide, carbamate or urea linkage to an amine group (including but not limited to, the epsilon amine of lysine or the N-terminus) of the polypeptide. Alternatively, Y may be a maleimide linkage to a thiol group (including but not limited to, the thiol group of cysteine). Alternatively, Y may be a linkage to a residue not commonly accessible via the 20 common amino acids. For example, an azide group on the PEG can be reacted with an alkyne group on the hIFN polypeptide to form a Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition product. Alternatively, an alkyne group on the PEG can be reacted with an

azide group present in a non-naturally encoded amino acid to form a similar product. In some embodiments, a strong nucleophile (including but not limited to, hydrazine, hydrazide, hydroxylamine, semicarbazide) can be reacted with an aldehyde or ketone group present in a non-naturally encoded amino acid to form a hydrazone, oxime or semicarbazone, as applicable, which in some cases can be further reduced by treatment with an appropriate reducing agent. Alternatively, the strong nucleophile can be incorporated into the hIFN polypeptide via a non-naturally encoded amino acid and used to react preferentially with a ketone or aldehyde group present in the water soluble polymer.

[338] Any molecular mass for a PEG can be used as practically desired, including but not limited to, from about 1,000 Daltons (Da) to 100,000 Da or more as desired (including but not limited to, sometimes 1-50 kDa or 10-40 kDa). Branched chain PEGs, including but not limited to, PEG molecules with each chain having a MW ranging from 10-40 kDa (including but not limited to, 5-20 kDa) can also be used. A wide range of PEG molecules are described in, including but not limited to, the Shearwater Polymers, Inc. catalog, Nektar Therapeutics catalog, incorporated herein by reference.

[339] Generally, at least one terminus of the PEG molecule is available for reaction with the non-naturally-encoded amino acid. For example, PEG derivatives bearing alkyne and azide moieties for reaction with amino acid side chains can be used to attach PEG to non-naturally encoded amino acids as described herein. If the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises an azide, then the PEG will typically contain either an alkyne moiety to effect formation of the [3+2] cycloaddition product or an activated PEG species (i.e., ester, carbonate) containing a phosphine group to effect formation of the amide linkage. Alternatively, if the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises an alkyne, then the PEG will typically contain an azide moiety to effect formation of the [3+2] Huisgen cycloaddition product. If the non-naturally encoded amino acid comprises a carbonyl group, the PEG will typically comprise a potent nucleophile (including but not limited to, a hydrazide, hydroxylamine or semicarbazide functionality) in order to effect formation of corresponding hydrazone, oxime, and semicarbazone linkages, respectively. In other alternatives, a reverse of the orientation of the reactive groups described above can be used, i.e., an azide moiety in the non-naturally encoded amino acid can be reacted with a PEG derivative containing an alkyne.

[340] In some embodiments, the hIFN variant with a PEG derivative contains a chemical functionality that is reactive with the chemical functionality present on the side chain of the non-naturally encoded amino acid.

[341] The invention provides in some embodiments azide- and acetylene-containing polymer derivatives comprising a water soluble polymer backbone having an average molecular weight from about 800 Da to about 100,000 Da. The polymer backbone of the water-soluble polymer can be poly(ethylene glycol). However, it should be understood that a wide variety of water soluble polymers including but not limited to poly(ethylene)glycol and other related polymers, including poly(dextran) and poly(propylene glycol), are also suitable for use in the practice of this invention and that the use of the term PEG or poly(ethylene glycol) is intended to encompass and include all such molecules. The term PEG includes, but is not limited to, poly(ethylene glycol) in any of its forms, including bifunctional PEG, multiarmed PEG, derivatized PEG, forked PEG, branched PEG, pendent PEG (i.e. PEG or related polymers having one or more functional groups pendent to the polymer backbone), or PEG with degradable linkages therein.

[342] PEG is typically clear, colorless, odorless, soluble in water, stable to heat, inert to many chemical agents, does not hydrolyze or deteriorate, and is generally non-toxic. Poly(ethylene glycol) is considered to be biocompatible, which is to say that PEG is capable of coexistence with living tissues or organisms without causing harm. More specifically, PEG is substantially non-immunogenic, which is to say that PEG does not tend to produce an immune response in the body. When attached to a molecule having some desirable function in the body, such as a biologically active agent, the PEG tends to mask the agent and can reduce or eliminate any immune response so that an organism can tolerate the presence of the agent. PEG conjugates tend not to produce a substantial immune response or cause clotting or other undesirable effects. PEG having the formula --CH₂CH₂O--(CH₂CH₂O)_n--CH₂CH₂--, where n is from about 3 to about 4000, typically from about 20 to about 2000, is suitable for use in the present invention. PEG having a molecular weight of from about 800 Da to about 100,000 Da are in some embodiments of the present invention particularly useful as the polymer backbone.

[343] The polymer backbone can be linear or branched. Branched polymer backbones are generally known in the art. Typically, a branched polymer has a central branch core moiety and a plurality of linear polymer chains linked to the central branch core. PEG is commonly used in branched forms that can be prepared by addition of ethylene oxide to various polyols, such as glycerol, glycerol oligomers, pentaerythritol and sorbitol. The central branch moiety can also be derived from several amino acids, such as lysine. The branched

poly(ethylene glycol) can be represented in general form as $R(-\text{PEG}-\text{OH})_m$ in which R is derived from a core moiety, such as glycerol, glycerol oligomers, or pentaerythritol, and m represents the number of arms. Multi-armed PEG molecules, such as those described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,932,462 5,643,575; 5,229,490; 4,289,872; U.S. Pat. Appl. 2003/0143596; WO 96/21469; and WO 93/21259, each of which is incorporated by reference herein in its entirety, can also be used as the polymer backbone.

[344] Branched PEG can also be in the form of a forked PEG represented by $\text{PEG}(-\text{YCHZ}_2)_n$, where Y is a linking group and Z is an activated terminal group linked to CH by a chain of atoms of defined length.

10 [345] Yet another branched form, the pendant PEG, has reactive groups, such as carboxyl, along the PEG backbone rather than at the end of PEG chains.

[346] In addition to these forms of PEG, the polymer can also be prepared with weak or degradable linkages in the backbone. For example, PEG can be prepared with ester linkages in the polymer backbone that are subject to hydrolysis. As shown below, this hydrolysis results in cleavage of the polymer into fragments of lower molecular weight:



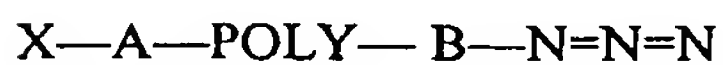
It is understood by those skilled in the art that the term poly(ethylene glycol) or PEG represents or includes all the forms known in the art including but not limited to those disclosed herein.

20 [347] Many other polymers are also suitable for use in the present invention. In some embodiments, polymer backbones that are water-soluble, with from 2 to about 300 termini, are particularly useful in the invention. Examples of suitable polymers include, but are not limited to, other poly(alkylene glycols), such as poly(propylene glycol) ("PPG"), copolymers thereof (including but not limited to copolymers of ethylene glycol and propylene glycol), terpolymers thereof, mixtures thereof, and the like. Although the molecular weight of each chain of the polymer backbone can vary, it is typically in the range of from about 800 Da to about 100,000 Da, often from about 6,000 Da to about 80,000 Da.

[348] Those of ordinary skill in the art will recognize that the foregoing list for substantially water soluble backbones is by no means exhaustive and is merely illustrative, and that all polymeric materials having the qualities described above are contemplated as being suitable for use in the present invention.

[349] In some embodiments of the present invention the polymer derivatives are "multi-functional", meaning that the polymer backbone has at least two termini, and possibly as many as about 300 termini, functionalized or activated with a functional group. Multifunctional polymer derivatives include, but are not limited to, linear polymers having two termini, each terminus being bonded to a functional group which may be the same or different.

[350] In one embodiment, the polymer derivative has the structure:



wherein:

N=N=N is an azide moiety;

B is a linking moiety, which may be present or absent;

POLY is a water-soluble non-antigenic polymer;

A is a linking moiety, which may be present or absent and which may be the same as B or different; and

X is a second functional group.

Examples of a linking moiety for A and B include, but are not limited to, a multiply-functionalized alkyl group containing up to 18, and more preferably between 1-10 carbon atoms. A heteroatom such as nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur may be included with the alkyl chain. The alkyl chain may also be branched at a heteroatom. Other examples of a linking moiety for A and B include, but are not limited to, a multiply functionalized aryl group, containing up to 10 and more preferably 5-6 carbon atoms. The aryl group may be substituted with one more carbon atoms, nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atoms. Other examples of suitable linking groups include those linking groups described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,932,462; 5,643,575; and U.S. Pat. Appl. Publication 2003/0143596, each of which is incorporated by reference herein. Those of ordinary skill in the art will recognize that the foregoing list for linking moieties is by no means exhaustive and is merely illustrative, and that all linking moieties having the qualities described above are contemplated to be suitable for use in the present invention.

[351] Examples of suitable functional groups for use as X include, but are not limited to, hydroxyl, protected hydroxyl, alkoxyl, active ester, such as N-

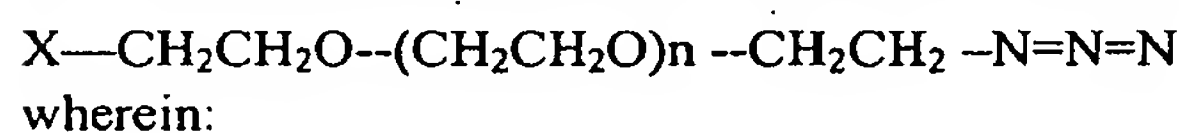
hydroxysuccinimidyl esters and 1-benzotriazolyl esters, active carbonate, such as N-hydroxysuccinimidyl carbonates and 1-benzotriazolyl carbonates, acetal, aldehyde, aldehyde hydrates, alkenyl, acrylate, methacrylate, acrylamide, active sulfone, amine, aminooxy, protected amine, hydrazide, protected hydrazide, protected thiol, carboxylic acid, protected
 5 carboxylic acid, isocyanate, isothiocyanate, maleimide, vinylsulfone, dithiopyridine, vinylpyridine, iodoacetamide, epoxide, glyoxals, diones, mesylates, tosylates, tresylate, alkene, ketone, and azide. As is understood by those skilled in the art, the selected X moiety should be compatible with the azide group so that reaction with the azide group does not occur. The azide-containing polymer derivatives may be homobifunctional, meaning that the
 10 second functional group (i.e., X) is also an azide moiety, or heterobifunctional, meaning that the second functional group is a different functional group.

[352] The term "protected" refers to the presence of a protecting group or moiety that prevents reaction of the chemically reactive functional group under certain reaction conditions. The protecting group will vary depending on the type of chemically reactive
 15 group being protected. For example, if the chemically reactive group is an amine or a hydrazide, the protecting group can be selected from the group of tert-butyloxycarbonyl (t-Boc) and 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl (Fmoc). If the chemically reactive group is a thiol, the protecting group can be orthopyridyldisulfide. If the chemically reactive group is a carboxylic acid, such as butanoic or propionic acid, or a hydroxyl group, the protecting group can be
 20 benzyl or an alkyl group such as methyl, ethyl, or tert-butyl. Other protecting groups known in the art may also be used in the present invention.

[353] Specific examples of terminal functional groups in the literature include, but are not limited to, N-succinimidyl carbonate (see e.g., U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,281,698, 5,468,478), amine (see, e.g., Buckmann et al. Makromol. Chem. 182:1379 (1981), Zaplisky et al. Eur.
 25 Polym. J. 19:1177 (1983)), hydrazide (See, e.g., Andresz et al. Makromol. Chem. 179:301 (1978)), succinimidyl propionate and succinimidyl butanoate (see, e.g., Olson et al. in Poly(ethylene glycol) Chemistry & Biological Applications, pp 170-181, Harris & Zaplisky Eds., ACS, Washington, D.C., 1997; see also U.S. Pat. No. 5,672,662), succinimidyl succinate (See, e.g., Abuchowski et al. Cancer Biochem. Biophys. 7:175 (1984) and Joppich
 30 et al. Macromol. Chem. 180:1381 (1979), succinimidyl ester (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 4,670,417), benzotriazole carbonate (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 5,650,234), glycidyl ether (see, e.g., Pitha et al. Eur. J Biochem. 94:11 (1979), Elling et al., Biotech. Appl. Biochem. 13:354

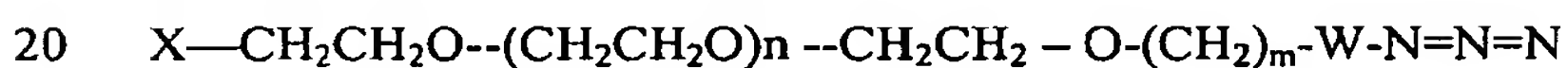
(1991), oxycarbonylimidazole (see, e.g., Beauchamp, et al., Anal. Biochem. 131:25 (1983), Tondelli et al. J. Controlled Release 1:251 (1985)), p-nitrophenyl carbonate (see, e.g., Veronese, et al., Appl. Biochem. Biotech., 11: 141 (1985); and Sartore et al., Appl. Biochem. Biotech., 27:45 (1991)), aldehyde (see, e.g., Harris et al. J. Polym. Sci. Chem. Ed. 22:341 (1984), U.S. Pat. No. 5,824,784, U.S. Pat. No. 5,252,714), maleimide (see, e.g., Goodson et al. Bio/Technology 8:343 (1990), Romani et al. in Chemistry of Peptides and Proteins 2:29 (1984)), and Kogan, Synthetic Comm. 22:2417 (1992)), orthopyridyl-disulfide (see, e.g., Woghiren, et al. Bioconj. Chem. 4:314(1993)), acrylol (see, e.g., Sawhney et al., Macromolecules, 26:581 (1993)), vinylsulfone (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 5,900,461). All of the above references and patents are incorporated herein by reference.

[354] In certain embodiments of the present invention, the polymer derivatives of the invention comprise a polymer backbone having the structure:



- 15 X is a functional group as described above; and
n is about 20 to about 4000.

In another embodiment, the polymer derivatives of the invention comprise a polymer backbone having the structure:

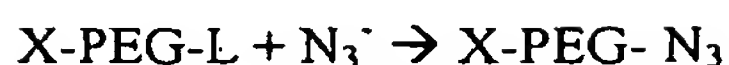


wherein:

W is an aliphatic or aromatic linker moiety comprising between 1-10 carbon atoms;
n is about 20 to about 4000; and

- 25 X is a functional group as described above.

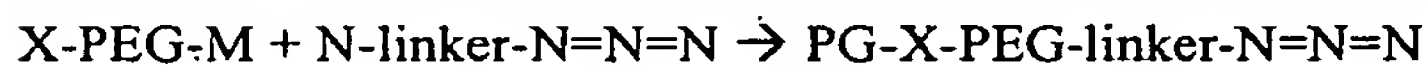
[355] The azide-containing PEG derivatives of the invention can be prepared by a variety of methods known in the art and/or disclosed herein. In one method, shown below, a water soluble polymer backbone having an average molecular weight from about 800 Da to about 100,000 Da, the polymer backbone having a first terminus bonded to a first functional group and a second terminus bonded to a suitable leaving group, is reacted with an azide anion (which may be paired with any of a number of suitable counter-ions, including sodium, potassium, tert-butylammonium and so forth). The leaving group undergoes a nucleophilic displacement and is replaced by the azide moiety, affording the desired azide-containing PEG polymer.



[356] As shown, a suitable polymer backbone for use in the present invention has the formula X-PEG-L, wherein PEG is poly(ethylene glycol) and X is a functional group which does not react with azide groups and L is a suitable leaving group. Examples of suitable functional groups include, but are not limited to, hydroxyl, protected hydroxyl, acetal, alkenyl, amine, aminooxy, protected amine, protected hydrazide, protected thiol, carboxylic acid, protected carboxylic acid, maleimide, dithiopyridine, and vinylpyridine, and ketone. Examples of suitable leaving groups include, but are not limited to, chloride, bromide, iodide, mesylate, tresylate, and tosylate.

[357] In another method for preparation of the azide-containing polymer derivatives of the present invention, a linking agent bearing an azide functionality is contacted with a water soluble polymer backbone having an average molecular weight from about 800 Da to about 100,000 Da, wherein the linking agent bears a chemical functionality that will react selectively with a chemical functionality on the PEG polymer, to form an azide-containing polymer derivative product wherein the azide is separated from the polymer backbone by a linking group.

[358] An exemplary reaction scheme is shown below:



wherein:

PEG is poly(ethylene glycol) and X is a capping group such as alkoxy or a functional group as described above; and

M is a functional group that is not reactive with the azide functionality but that will react efficiently and selectively with the N functional group.

[359] Examples of suitable functional groups include, but are not limited to, M being a carboxylic acid, carbonate or active ester if N is an amine; M being a ketone if N is a hydrazide or aminooxy moiety; M being a leaving group if N is a nucleophile.

[360] Purification of the crude product may be accomplished by known methods including, but are not limited to, precipitation of the product followed by chromatography, if necessary.

[361] A more specific example is shown below in the case of PEG diamine, in which one of the amines is protected by a protecting group moiety such as tert-butyl-Boc and

AMBX-0019.00US

the resulting mono-protected PEG diamine is reacted with a linking moiety that bears the azide functionality:



5 [362] In this instance, the amine group can be coupled to the carboxylic acid group using a variety of activating agents such as thionyl chloride or carbodiimide reagents and N-hydroxysuccinimide or N-hydroxybenzotriazole to create an amide bond between the monoamine PEG derivative and the azide-bearing linker moiety. After successful formation of the amide bond, the resulting N-tert-butyl-Boc-protected azide-containing derivative can
10 be used directly to modify bioactive molecules or it can be further elaborated to install other useful functional groups. For instance, the N-t-Boc group can be hydrolyzed by treatment with strong acid to generate an omega-amino-PEG-azide. The resulting amine can be used as a synthetic handle to install other useful functionality such as maleimide groups, activated disulfides, activated esters and so forth for the creation of valuable heterobifunctional
15 reagents.

[363] Heterobifunctional derivatives are particularly useful when it is desired to attach different molecules to each terminus of the polymer. For example, the omega-N-amino-N-azido PEG would allow the attachment of a molecule having an activated electrophilic group, such as an aldehyde, ketone, activated ester, activated carbonate and so
20 forth, to one terminus of the PEG and a molecule having an acetylene group to the other terminus of the PEG.

[364] In another embodiment of the invention, the polymer derivative has the structure:



25 wherein:

R can be either H or an alkyl, alkene, alkoxy, or aryl or substituted aryl group;

B is a linking moiety, which may be present or absent;

POLY is a water-soluble non-antigenic polymer;

A is a linking moiety, which may be present or absent and which may be the same as B or
30 different; and

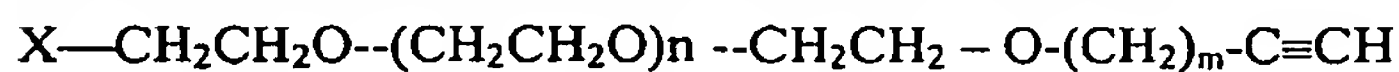
X is a second functional group.

[365] Examples of a linking moiety for A and B include, but are not limited to, a multiply-functionalized alkyl group containing up to 18, and more preferably between 1-10

carbon atoms. A heteroatom such as nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur may be included with the alkyl chain. The alkyl chain may also be branched at a heteroatom. Other examples of a linking moiety for A and B include, but are not limited to, a multiply functionalized aryl group, containing up to 10 and more preferably 5-6 carbon atoms. The aryl group may be substituted with one more carbon atoms, nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur atoms. Other examples of suitable linking groups include those linking groups described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,932,462 and 5,643,575 and U.S. Pat. Appl. Publication 2003/0143596, each of which is incorporated by reference. Those of ordinary skill in the art will recognize that the foregoing list for linking moieties is by no means exhaustive and is intended to be merely illustrative, and that a wide variety of linking moieties having the qualities described above are contemplated to be useful in the present invention.

[366] Examples of suitable functional groups for use as X include hydroxyl, protected hydroxyl, alkoxyl, active ester, such as N-hydroxysuccinimidyl esters and 1-benzotriazolyl esters, active carbonate, such as N-hydroxysuccinimidyl carbonates and 1-benzotriazolyl carbonates, acetal, aldehyde, aldehyde hydrates, alkenyl, acrylate, methacrylate, acrylamide, active sulfone, amine, aminooxy, protected amine, hydrazide, protected hydrazide, protected thiol, carboxylic acid, protected carboxylic acid, isocyanate, isothiocyanate, maleimide, vinylsulfone, dithiopyridine, vinylpyridine, iodoacetamide, epoxide, glyoxals, diones, mesylates, tosylates, and tresylate, alkene, ketone, and acetylene. As would be understood, the selected X moiety should be compatible with the acetylene group so that reaction with the acetylene group does not occur. The acetylene-containing polymer derivatives may be homobifunctional, meaning that the second functional group (i.e., X) is also an acetylene moiety, or heterobifunctional, meaning that the second functional group is a different functional group.

[367] In another embodiment of the present invention, the polymer derivatives comprise a polymer backbone having the structure:



wherein:

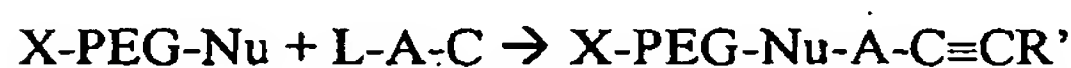
X is a functional group as described above;

n is about 20 to about 4000; and

m is between 1 and 10.

Specific examples of each of the heterobifunctional PEG polymers are shown below.

[368] The acetylene-containing PEG derivatives of the invention can be prepared using methods known to those skilled in the art and/or disclosed herein. In one method, a water soluble polymer backbone having an average molecular weight from about 800 Da to about 100,000 Da, the polymer backbone having a first terminus bonded to a first functional group and a second terminus bonded to a suitable nucleophilic group, is reacted with a compound that bears both an acetylene functionality and a leaving group that is suitable for reaction with the nucleophilic group on the PEG. When the PEG polymer bearing the nucleophilic moiety and the molecule bearing the leaving group are combined, the leaving group undergoes a nucleophilic displacement and is replaced by the nucleophilic moiety, affording the desired acetylene-containing polymer.



[369] As shown, a preferred polymer backbone for use in the reaction has the formula X-PEG-Nu, wherein PEG is poly(ethylene glycol), Nu is a nucleophilic moiety and X is a functional group that does not react with Nu, L or the acetylene functionality.

[370] Examples of Nu include, but are not limited to, amine, alkoxy, aryloxy, sulfhydryl, imino, carboxylate, hydrazide, aminoxy groups that would react primarily via a SN2-type mechanism. Additional examples of Nu groups include those functional groups that would react primarily via an nucleophilic addition reaction. Examples of L groups include chloride, bromide, iodide, mesylate, tresylate, and tosylate and other groups expected to undergo nucleophilic displacement as well as ketones, aldehydes, thioesters, olefins, alpha-beta unsaturated carbonyl groups, carbonates and other electrophilic groups expected to undergo addition by nucleophiles.

[371] In another embodiment of the present invention, A is an aliphatic linker of between 1-10 carbon atoms or a substituted aryl ring of between 6-14 carbon atoms. X is a functional group which does not react with azide groups and L is a suitable leaving group

[372] In another method for preparation of the acetylene-containing polymer derivatives of the invention, a PEG polymer having an average molecular weight from about 800 Da to about 100,000 Da, bearing either a protected functional group or a capping agent at one terminus and a suitable leaving group at the other terminus is contacted by an acetylene anion.

[373] An exemplary reaction scheme is shown below:

AMBX-0019.00US



wherein:

PEG is poly(ethylene glycol) and X is a capping group such as alkoxy or a functional group as described above; and

- 5 R' is either H, an alkyl, alkoxy, aryl or aryloxy group or a substituted alkyl, alkoxyl, aryl or aryloxy group.

[374] In the example above, the leaving group L should be sufficiently reactive to undergo SN2-type displacement when contacted with a sufficient concentration of the acetylene anion. The reaction conditions required to accomplish SN2 displacement of
10 leaving groups by acetylene anions are well known in the art.

[375] Purification of the crude product can usually be accomplished by methods known in the art including, but are not limited to, precipitation of the product followed by chromatography, if necessary.

[376] Water soluble polymers can be linked to the hIFN polypeptides of the
15 invention. The water soluble polymers may be linked via a non-naturally encoded amino acid incorporated in the hIFN polypeptide or any functional group or substituent of a non-naturally encoded or naturally encoded amino acid, or any functional group or substituent added to a non-naturally encoded or naturally encoded amino acid. Alternatively, the water soluble polymers are linked to a hIFN polypeptide incorporating a non-naturally encoded
20 amino acid via a naturally-occurring amino acid (including but not limited to, cysteine, lysine or the amine group of the N-terminal residue). In some cases, the hIFN polypeptides of the invention comprise 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, wherein one or more non-naturally-encoded amino acid(s) linked to water soluble polymer(s) (including but not limited to, PEG and/or oligosaccharides). In some cases, the hIFN polypeptides of the invention further comprise 1,
25 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, or more naturally-encoded amino acid(s) linked to water soluble polymers. In some cases, the hIFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally encoded amino acid(s) linked to water soluble polymers and one or more naturally-occurring amino acids linked to water soluble polymers. In some embodiments, the water soluble polymers used in the present invention enhance the serum half-life of the hIFN
30 polypeptide relative to the unconjugated form.

[377] The number of water soluble polymers linked to a hIFN polypeptide (i.e., the extent of PEGylation or glycosylation) of the present invention can be adjusted to provide an altered (including but not limited to, increased or decreased) pharmacologic, pharmacokinetic

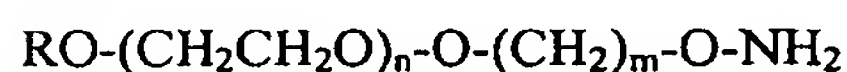
AMBX-0019.00US

or pharmacodynamic characteristic such as *in vivo* half-life. In some embodiments, the half-life of hIFN is increased at least about 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90 percent, two fold, five-fold, 10-fold, 50-fold, or at least about 100-fold over an unmodified polypeptide.

5 **PEG derivatives containing a strong nucleophilic group (i.e., hydrazide, hydrazine, hydroxylamine or semicarbazide)**

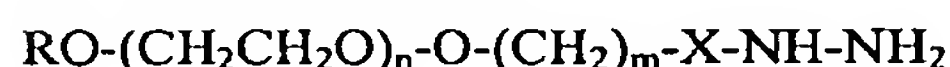
[378] In one embodiment of the present invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising a carbonyl-containing non-naturally encoded amino acid is modified with a PEG derivative that contains a terminal hydrazine, hydroxylamine, hydrazide or semicarbazide moiety that is
10 linked directly to the PEG backbone.

[379] In some embodiments, the hydroxylamine-terminal PEG derivative will have the structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000 (i.e.,
15 average molecular weight is between 5-40 kDa).

[380] In some embodiments, the hydrazine- or hydrazide-containing PEG derivative will have the structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000 and X is
20 optionally a carbonyl group (C=O) that can be present or absent.

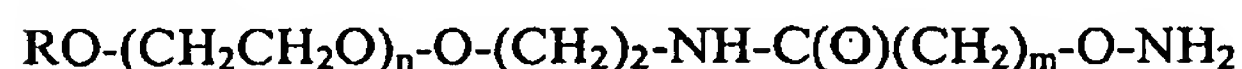
[381] In some embodiments, the semicarbazide-containing PEG derivative will have the structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000.

25 [382] In another embodiment of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising a carbonyl-containing amino acid is modified with a PEG derivative that contains a terminal hydroxylamine, hydrazide or semicarbazide moiety that is linked to the PEG backbone by means of an amide linkage.

[383] In some embodiments, the hydroxylamine-terminal PEG derivatives have the
30 structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000 (i.e.,
average molecular weight is between 5-40 kDa).

[384] In some embodiments, the hydrazine- or hydrazide-containing PEG derivatives have the structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10, n is 100-1,000 and X is optionally a carbonyl group (C=O) that can be present or absent.

[385] In some embodiments, the semicarbazide-containing PEG derivatives have the structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000.

10 [386] In another embodiment of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising a carbonyl-containing amino acid is modified with a branched PEG derivative that contains a terminal hydrazine, hydroxylamine, hydrazide or semicarbazide moiety, with each chain of the branched PEG having a MW ranging from 10-40 kDa and, more preferably, from 5-20 kDa.

15 [387] In another embodiment of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid is modified with a PEG derivatives having a branched structure. For instance, in some embodiments, the hydrazine- or hydrazide-terminal PEG derivative will have the following structure:



20 where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000, and X is optionally a carbonyl group (C=O) that can be present or absent.

[388] In some embodiments, the PEG derivatives containing a semicarbazide group will have the structure:



25 where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), X is optionally NH, O, S, C(O) or not present, m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000.

[389] In some embodiments, the PEG derivatives containing a hydroxylamine group will have the structure:



30 where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), X is optionally NH, O, S, C(O) or not present, m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000.

[390] The degree and sites at which the water soluble polymer(s) are linked to hIFN can modulate the binding of hIFN to the hIFN receptor at Site 1. In some embodiments, the linkages are arranged such that the hIFN polypeptide binds the hIFN receptor at Site 1 with a

AMBX-0019.00US

K_d of about 400 nM or lower, with a K_d of 150 nM or lower, and in some cases with a K_d of 100 nM or lower, as measured by an equilibrium binding assay, such as that described in Spencer *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 263:7862-7867 (1988).

- [391] Methods and chemistry for activation of polymers as well as for conjugation of peptides are described in the literature and are known in the art. Commonly used methods for activation of polymers include, but are not limited to, activation of functional groups with cyanogen bromide, periodate, glutaraldehyde, biepoxydes, epichlorohydrin, divinylsulfone, carbodiimide, sulfonyl halides, trichlorotriazine, *etc.* (see, R. F. Taylor, (1991), PROTEIN IMMOBILISATION. FUNDAMENTAL AND APPLICATIONS, Marcel Dekker, N.Y.; S. S. Wong, (1992), CHEMISTRY OF PROTEIN CONJUGATION AND CROSSLINKING, CRC Press, Boca Raton; G. T. Hermanson *et al.*, (1993), IMMOBILIZED AFFINITY LIGAND TECHNIQUES, Academic Press, N.Y.; Dunn, R.L., *et al.*, Eds. POLYMERIC DRUGS AND DRUG DELIVERY SYSTEMS, ACS Symposium Series Vol. 469, American Chemical Society, Washington, D.C. 1991).
- [392] Several reviews and monographs on the functionalization and conjugation of PEG are available. See, for example, Harris, *Macromol. Chem. Phys.* C25: 325-373 (1985); Scouten, *Methods in Enzymology* 135: 30-65 (1987); Wong *et al.*, *Enzyme Microb. Technol.* 14: 866-874 (1992); Delgado *et al.*, *Critical Reviews in Therapeutic Drug Carrier Systems* 9: 249-304 (1992); Zalipsky, *Bioconjugate Chem.* 6: 150-165 (1995).
- [393] Methods for activation of polymers can also be found in WO 94/17039, U.S. Pat. No. 5,324,844, WO 94/18247, WO 94/04193, U.S. Pat. No. 5,219,564, U.S. Pat. No. 5,122,614, WO 90/13540, U.S. Pat. No. 5,281,698, and more WO 93/15189, and for conjugation between activated polymers and enzymes including but not limited to Coagulation Factor VIII (WO 94/15625), haemoglobin (WO 94/09027), oxygen carrying molecule (U.S. Pat. No. 4,412,989), ribonuclease and superoxide dismutase (Veronese *et al.*, *App. Biochem. Biotech.* 11: 141-45 (1985)).
- [394] PEGylation (i.e., addition of any water soluble polymer) of hIFN polypeptides containing a non-naturally encoded amino acid, such as *p*-azido-L-phenylalanine, is carried out by any convenient method. For example, hIFN polypeptide is PEGylated with an alkyne-terminated mPEG derivative. Briefly, an excess of solid mPEG(5000)-O-CH₂-C≡CH is added, with stirring, to an aqueous solution of *p*-azido-L-Phe-containing hIFN at room temperature. Typically, the aqueous solution is buffered with a buffer having a pK_a near the pH at which the reaction is to be carried out (generally about pH 4-10). Examples of suitable

AMBX-0019.00US

buffers for PEGylation at pH 7.5, for instance, include, but are not limited to, HEPES, phosphate, borate, TRIS-HCl, EPPS, and TES. The pH is continuously monitored and adjusted if necessary. The reaction is typically allowed to continue for between about 1-48 hours.

5 [395] The reaction products are subsequently subjected to hydrophobic interaction chromatography to separate the PEGylated hIFN variants from free mPEG(5000)-O-CH₂-C≡CH and any high-molecular weight complexes of the pegylated hIFN polypeptide which may form when unblocked PEG is activated at both ends of the molecule, thereby crosslinking hIFN variant molecules. The conditions during hydrophobic interaction
10 chromatography are such that free mPEG(5000)-O-CH₂-C≡CH flows through the column, while any crosslinked PEGylated hIFN variant complexes elute after the desired forms, which contain one hIFN variant molecule conjugated to one or more PEG groups. Suitable conditions vary depending on the relative sizes of the cross-linked complexes versus the desired conjugates and are readily determined by those skilled in the art. The eluent
15 containing the desired conjugates is concentrated by ultrafiltration and desalted by diafiltration.

[396] If necessary, the PEGylated hIFN obtained from the hydrophobic chromatography can be purified further by one or more procedures known to those skilled in the art including, but are not limited to, affinity chromatography; anion- or cation-exchange
20 chromatography (using, including but not limited to, DEAE SEPHAROSE); chromatography on silica; reverse phase HPLC; gel filtration (using, including but not limited to, SEPHADEX G-75); hydrophobic interaction chromatography; size-exclusion chromatography, metal-chelate chromatography; ultrafiltration/diafiltration; ethanol precipitation; ammonium sulfate precipitation; chromatofocusing; displacement chromatography; electrophoretic procedures
25 (including but not limited to preparative isoelectric focusing), differential solubility (including but not limited to ammonium sulfate precipitation), or extraction. Apparent molecular weight may be estimated by GPC by comparison to globular protein standards (PROTEIN PURIFICATION METHODS, A PRACTICAL APPROACH (Harris & Angal, Eds.) IRL Press 1989, 293-306). The purity of the hIFN-PEG conjugate can be assessed by proteolytic
30 degradation (including but not limited to, trypsin cleavage) followed by mass spectrometry analysis. Pepinsky B., *et.al.*, *J. Pharmacol. & Exp. Ther.* 297(3):1059-66 (2001).

[397] A water soluble polymer linked to an amino acid of a hIFN polypeptide of the invention can be further derivatized or substituted without limitation.

Azide-containing PEG derivatives

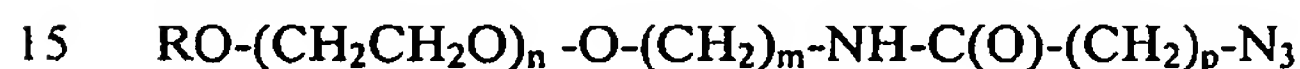
[398] In another embodiment of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide is modified with a PEG derivative that contains an azide moiety that will react with an alkyne moiety present on the side chain of the non-naturally encoded amino acid. In general, the PEG derivatives will have an average molecular weight ranging from 1-100 kDa and, in some embodiments, from 10-40 kDa.

[399] In some embodiments, the azide-terminal PEG derivative will have the structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000 (i.e., average molecular weight is between 5-40 kDa).

[400] In another embodiment, the azide-terminal PEG derivative will have the structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10, p is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000 (i.e., average molecular weight is between 5-40 kDa).

[401] In another embodiment of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising a alkyne-containing amino acid is modified with a branched PEG derivative that contains a terminal azide moiety, with each chain of the branched PEG having a MW ranging from 10-40 kDa and, more preferably, from 5-20 kDa. For instance, in some embodiments, the azide-terminal PEG derivative will have the following structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10, p is 2-10, and n is 100-1,000, and X is optionally an O, N, S or carbonyl group (C=O), in each case that can be present or absent.

Alkyne-containing PEG derivatives

[402] In another embodiment of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide is modified with a PEG derivative that contains an alkyne moiety that will react with an azide moiety present on the side chain of the non-naturally encoded amino acid.

[403] In some embodiments, the alkyne-terminal PEG derivative will have the following structure:

AMBX-0019.00US



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000 (i.e., average molecular weight is between 5-40 kDa).

[404] In another embodiment of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising an alkyne-containing non-naturally encoded amino acid is modified with a PEG derivative that contains a terminal azide or terminal alkyne moiety that is linked to the PEG backbone by means of an amide linkage.

[405] In some embodiments, the alkyne-terminal PEG derivative will have the following structure:



where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10, p is 2-10 and n is 100-1,000.

[406] In another embodiment of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising an azide-containing amino acid is modified with a branched PEG derivative that contains a terminal alkyne moiety, with each chain of the branched PEG having a MW ranging from 10-40 kDa and, more preferably, from 5-20 kDa. For instance, in some embodiments, the alkyne-terminal PEG derivative will have the following structure:

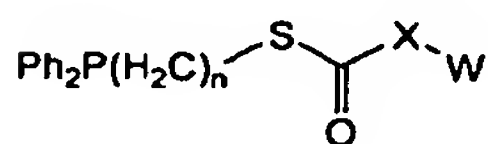


where R is a simple alkyl (methyl, ethyl, propyl, etc.), m is 2-10, p is 2-10, and n is 100-1,000, and X is optionally an O, N, S or carbonyl group (C=O), or not present.

Phosphine-containing PEG derivatives

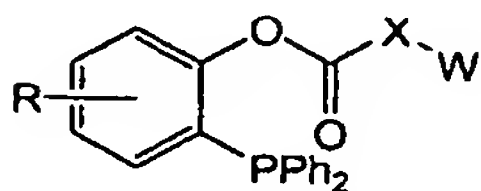
[407] In another embodiment of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide is modified with a PEG derivative that contains an activated functional group (including but not limited to, ester, carbonate) further comprising an aryl phosphine group that will react with an azide moiety present on the side chain of the non-naturally encoded amino acid. In general, the PEG derivatives will have an average molecular weight ranging from 1-100 kDa and, in some embodiments, from 10-40 kDa.

[408] In some embodiments, the PEG derivative will have the structure:



wherein n is 1-10; X can be O, N, S or not present, Ph is phenyl, and W is a water soluble polymer.

[409] In some embodiments, the PEG derivative will have the structure:



wherein X can be O, N, S or not present, Ph is phenyl, W is a water soluble polymer and R can be H, alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl and substituted aryl groups. Exemplary R groups include but are not limited to -CH₂, -C(CH₃)₃, -OR', -NR'R'', -SR', -halogen, -C(O)R', -CONR'R'', -S(O)₂R', -S(O)₂NR'R'', -CN and -NO₂. R', R'', R''' and R'''' each independently refer to hydrogen, substituted or unsubstituted heteroalkyl, substituted or unsubstituted aryl, including but not limited to, aryl substituted with 1-3 halogens, substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, alkoxy or thioalkoxy groups, or arylalkyl groups. When a compound of the invention includes more than one R group, for example, each of the R groups is independently selected as are each R', R'', R''' and R'''' groups when more than one of these groups is present. When R' and R'' are attached to the same nitrogen atom, they can be combined with the nitrogen atom to form a 5-, 6-, or 7-membered ring. For example, -NR'R'' is meant to include, but not be limited to, 1-pyrrolidinyl and 4-morpholinyl. From the above discussion of substituents, one of skill in the art will understand that the term "alkyl" is meant to include groups including carbon atoms bound to groups other than hydrogen groups, such as haloalkyl (including but not limited to, -CF₃ and -CH₂CF₃) and acyl (including but not limited to, -C(O)CH₃, -C(O)CF₃, -C(O)CH₂OCH₃, and the like).

Other PEG derivatives and General PEGylation techniques

[410] Other exemplary PEG molecules that may be linked to hIFN polypeptides, as well as PEGylation methods include those described in, e.g., U.S. Patent Publication No. 2004/0001838; 2002/0052009; 2003/0162949; 2004/0013637; 2003/0228274; 2003/0220447; 2003/0158333; 2003/0143596; 2003/0114647; 2003/0105275; 2003/0105224; 2003/0023023; 2002/0156047; 2002/0099133; 2002/0086939; 2002/0082345; 2002/0072573; 2002/0052430; 2002/0040076; 2002/0037949; 2002/0002250; 2001/0056171; 2001/0044526; 2001/0027217; 2001/0021763; U.S. Patent No. 6,646,110; 5,824,778; 5,476,653; 5,219,564; 5,629,384; 5,736,625; 4,902,502; 5,281,698; 5,122,614; 5,473,034; 5,516,673; 5,382,657; 6,552,167; 6,610,281; 6,515,100; 6,461,603; 6,436,386; 6,214,966; 5,990,237; 5,900,461; 5,739,208; 5,672,662; 5,446,090; 5,808,096; 5,612,460; 5,324,844; 5,252,714; 6,420,339; 6,201,072; 6,451,346; 6,306,821; 5,559,213; 5,612,460; 5,747,646; 5,834,594; 5,849,860; 5,980,948; 6,004,573; 6,129,912; WO 97/32607, EP 229,108, EP 402,378, WO 92/16555, WO 94/04193, WO 94/14758, WO 94/17039, WO 94/18247, WO 94/28024, WO 95/00162, WO

AMBX-0019.00US

95/11924, WO95/13090, WO 95/33490, WO 96/00080, WO 97/18832, WO 98/41562, WO 98/48837, WO 99/32134, WO 99/32139, WO 99/32140, WO 96/40791, WO 98/32466, WO 95/06058, EP 439 508, WO 97/03106, WO 96/21469, WO 95/13312, EP 921 131, , WO 98/05363, EP 809 996, WO 96/41813, WO 96/07670, EP 605 963, EP 510 356, EP 400 472, EP 183 503 and EP 154 316, which are incorporated by reference herein. Any of the PEG molecules described herein may be used in any form, including but not limited to, single chain, branched chain, multiarm chain, single functional, bi-functional, multi-functional, or any combination thereof.

10 **Enhancing affinity for serum albumin**

[411] Various molecules can also be fused to the hIFN polypeptides of the invention to modulate the half-life of hIFN in serum. In some embodiments, molecules are linked or fused to hIFN polypeptides of the invention to enhance affinity for endogenous serum albumin in an animal.

15 [412] For example, in some cases, a recombinant fusion of a hIFN polypeptide and an albumin binding sequence is made. Exemplary albumin binding sequences include, but are not limited to, the albumin binding domain from streptococcal protein G (*see. e.g., Makrides et al., J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.* 277:534-542 (1996) and Sjolander *et al., J. Immunol. Methods* 201:115-123 (1997)), or albumin-binding peptides such as those described in, e.g.,
20 Dennis, *et al., J. Biol. Chem.* 277:35035-35043 (2002).

[413] In other embodiments, the hIFN polypeptides of the present invention are acylated with fatty acids. In some cases, the fatty acids promote binding to serum albumin. *See, e.g., Kurtzhals, et al., Biochem. J.* 312:725-731 (1995).

[414] In other embodiments, the hIFN polypeptides of the invention are fused directly
25 with serum albumin (including but not limited to, human serum albumin).

[415] Those of skill in the art will recognize that a wide variety of other molecules can also be linked to hIFN in the present invention to modulate binding to serum albumin or other serum components.

30 **X Glycosylation of hIFN**

[416] The invention includes hIFN polypeptides incorporating one or more non-naturally encoded amino acids bearing saccharide residues. The saccharide residues may be either natural (including but not limited to, N-acetylglucosamine) or non-natural (including but not limited to, 3-fluorogalactose). The saccharides may be linked to the non-naturally

AMBX-0019.00US

encoded amino acids either by an N- or O-linked glycosidic linkage (including but not limited to, N-acetylgalactose-L-serine) or a non-natural linkage (including but not limited to, an oxime or the corresponding C- or S-linked glycoside).

[417] The saccharide (including but not limited to, glycosyl) moieties can be added to hIFN polypeptides either *in vivo* or *in vitro*. In some embodiments of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising a carbonyl-containing non-naturally encoded amino acid is modified with a saccharide derivatized with an aminooxy group to generate the corresponding glycosylated polypeptide linked via an oxime linkage. Once attached to the non-naturally encoded amino acid, the saccharide may be further elaborated by treatment with glycosyltransferases and other enzymes to generate an oligosaccharide bound to the hIFN polypeptide. See, e.g., H. Liu, et al. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 125: 1702-1703 (2003).

[418] In some embodiments of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising a carbonyl-containing non-naturally encoded amino acid is modified directly with a glycan with defined structure prepared as an aminooxy derivative. One skilled in the art will recognize that other functionalities, including azide, alkyne, hydrazide, hydrazine, and semicarbazide, can be used to link the saccharide to the non-naturally encoded amino acid.

[419] In some embodiments of the invention, a hIFN polypeptide comprising an azide or alkynyl-containing non-naturally encoded amino acid can then be modified by, including but not limited to, a Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition reaction with, including but not limited to, alkynyl or azide derivatives, respectively. This method allows for proteins to be modified with extremely high selectivity.

XI. GH Supergene Family Member Dimers and Multimers

[420] The present invention also provides for GH supergene family member combinations (including but not limited to hIFN) homodimers, heterodimers, homomultimers, or heteromultimers (i.e., trimers, tetramers, etc.) where a GH supergene family member polypeptide such as hIFN containing one or more non-naturally encoded amino acids is bound to another GH supergene family member or variant thereof or any other polypeptide that is a non-GH supergene family member or variant thereof, either directly to the polypeptide backbone or via a linker. Due to its increased molecular weight compared to monomers, the GH supergene family member, such as hIFN, dimer or multimer conjugates may exhibit new or desirable properties, including but not limited to different pharmacological, pharmacokinetic, pharmacodynamic, modulated therapeutic half-life, or modulated plasma half-life relative to the monomeric GH supergene family member. In

some embodiments, the GH supergene family member, such as hIFN, dimers of the invention will modulate the dimerization of the GH supergene family member receptor. In other embodiments, the GH supergene family member dimers or multimers of the present invention will act as a GH supergene family member receptor antagonist, agonist, or modulator.

5 [421] In some embodiments, one or more of the hIFN molecules present in a hIFN containing dimer or multimer comprises a non-naturally encoded amino acid linked to a water soluble polymer that is present within the Site II binding region. As such, each of the hIFN molecules of the dimer or multimer are accessible for binding to the hIFN receptor via the Site I interface but are unavailable for binding to a second hIFN receptor via the Site II
10 interface. Thus, the hIFN dimer or multimer can engage the Site I binding sites of each of two distinct hIFN receptors but, as the hIFN molecules have a water soluble polymer attached to a non-genetically encoded amino acid present in the Site II region, the hIFN receptors cannot engage the Site II region of the hIFN ligand and the dimer or multimer acts as a hIFN antagonist. In some embodiments, one or more of the hIFN molecules present in a hIFN
15 containing dimer or multimer comprises a non-naturally encoded amino acid linked to a water soluble polymer that is present within the Site I binding region, allowing binding to the Site II region. Alternatively, in some embodiments one or more of the hIFN molecules present in a hIFN containing dimer or multimer comprises a non-naturally encoded amino acid linked to a water soluble polymer that is present at a site that is not within the Site I or
20 Site II binding region, such that both are available for binding. In some embodiments a combination of hIFN molecules is used having Site I, Site II, or both available for binding. A combination of hIFN molecules wherein at least one has Site I available for binding, and at least one has Site II available for binding may provide molecules having a desired activity or property. In addition, a combination of hIFN molecules having both Site I and Site II
25 available for binding may produce a super-agonist hIFN molecule.

[422] In some embodiments, the GH supergene family member polypeptides are linked directly, including but not limited to, via an Asn-Lys amide linkage or Cys-Cys disulfide linkage. In some embodiments, the linked GH supergene family member polypeptides, and/or the linked non-GH supergene family member, will comprise different
30 non-naturally encoded amino acids to facilitate dimerization, including but not limited to, an alkyne in one non-naturally encoded amino acid of a first hIFN polypeptide and an azide in a second non-naturally encoded amino acid of a second GH supergene family member polypeptide will be conjugated via a Huisgen [3+2] cycloaddition. Alternatively, a first GH supergene family member, and/or the linked non-GH supergene family member, polypeptide

comprising a ketone-containing non-naturally encoded amino acid can be conjugated to a second GH supergene family member polypeptide comprising a hydroxylamine-containing non-naturally encoded amino acid and the polypeptides are reacted via formation of the corresponding oxime.

5 [423] Alternatively, the two GH supergene family member polypeptides, and/or the linked non-GH supergene family member, are linked via a linker. Any hetero- or homo-bifunctional linker can be used to link the two GH supergene family member, and/or the linked non-GH supergene family member, polypeptides, which can have the same or different primary sequence. In some cases, the linker used to tether the GH supergene family member, and/or the linked non-GH supergene family member, polypeptides together can be a bifunctional PEG reagent.

15 [424] In some embodiments, the invention provides water-soluble bifunctional linkers that have a dumbbell structure that includes: a) an azide, an alkyne, a hydrazine, a hydrazide, a hydroxylamine, or a carbonyl-containing moiety on at least a first end of a polymer backbone; and b) at least a second functional group on a second end of the polymer backbone. The second functional group can be the same or different as the first functional group. The second functional group, in some embodiments, is not reactive with the first functional group. The invention provides, in some embodiments, water-soluble compounds that comprise at least one arm of a branched molecular structure. For example, the branched molecular structure can be dendritic.

20 [425] In some embodiments, the invention provides multimers comprising one or more GH supergene family member, such as hIFN, formed by reactions with water soluble activated polymers that have the structure:



25 wherein n is from about 5 to 3,000, m is 2-10, X can be an azide, an alkyne, a hydrazine, a hydrazide, an aminooxy group, a hydroxylamine, a acetyl, or carbonyl-containing moiety, and R is a capping group, a functional group, or a leaving group that can be the same or different as X. R can be, for example, a functional group selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, protected hydroxyl, alkoxyl, N-hydroxysuccinimidyl ester, 1-benzotriazolyl ester, N-hydroxysuccinimidyl carbonate, 1-benzotriazolyl carbonate, acetal, aldehyde, aldehyde hydrates, alkenyl, acrylate, methacrylate, acrylamide, active sulfone, amine, aminooxy, protected amine, hydrazide, protected hydrazide, protected thiol, carboxylic acid, protected carboxylic acid, isocyanate, isothiocyanate, maleimide, vinylsulfone,

AMBX-0019.00US

dithiopyridine, vinylpyridine, iodoacetamide, epoxide, glyoxals, diones, mesylates, tosylates, and tresylate, alkene, and ketone.

XII. Measurement of hIFN Activity and Affinity of hIFN for the hIFN Receptor

[426] The hIFN receptor can be prepared as described in U.S. Patent No. 6,566,132;

5 5,889,151; 5,861,258; 5,731,169; 5,578,707, which is incorporated by reference herein. hIFN polypeptide activity can be determined using standard or known *in vitro* or *in vivo* assays. For example, cells or cell lines that modulate growth or MHC Class I or II antigen production in response to hIFN or bind hIFN (including but not limited to, cells containing active IFN receptors such as human lymphoblastoid Daudi cells, or recombinant IFN receptor producing
10 cells) can be used to monitor hIFN receptor binding. For a non-PEGylated or PEGylated hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-natural amino acid, the affinity of the hormone for its receptor can be measured by using techniques known in the art such as a BIAcore™ biosensor (Pharmacia). *In vivo* animal models as well as human clinical trials for testing hIFN activity include those described in, e.g., Kontsek et al., *Acta Virol.* 43:63 (1999);
15 Youngster et al., *Current Pharma Design* 8:2139 (2002); Kozlowski et al., *BioDrugs* 15:419 (2001); U.S. Patent No. 6,180,096; 6,177,074; 6,042,822; 5,981,709; 5,951,974; 5,908,621; 5,711,944; 5,738,846, which are incorporated by reference herein.

[427] Regardless of which methods are used to create the present hIFN analogs, the analogs are subject to assays for biological activity. Tritiated thymidine assays may be
20 conducted to ascertain the degree of cell division. Other biological assays, however, may be used to ascertain the desired activity. Biological assays such as assaying for the ability to inhibit viral replication, also provides indication of IFN activity. See Bailon et al., *Bioconj. Chem.* 12:195 (2001); Forti et al., *Meth. Enzymol.* 119:533 (1986); Walter et al., *Cancer Biother. & Radiopharm.* 13:143 (1998); DiMarco et al., *BioChem. Biophys. Res. Com.*
25 202:1445 (1994); and U.S. Patent No.: 4,675,282; 4,241,174; 4,514,507; 4,622,292; 5,766,864, which are incorporated by reference herein. Other *in vitro* assays may be used to ascertain biological activity. In general, the test for biological activity should provide analysis for the desired result, such as increase or decrease in biological activity (as compared to non-altered IFN), different biological activity (as compared to non-altered IFN), receptor
30 affinity analysis, or serum half-life analysis.

[428] It was previously reported that Daudi cells will bind ¹²⁵I-labeled murine IFN and that this binding can be competed for by addition of unlabeled IFN (See e.g. U.S. Patent No. 5,516,514; 5,632,988). The ability of natural IFN and hIFN to compete for binding of ¹²⁵

I-IFN to human and murine leukemic cells is tested. Highly purified natural IFN (>95% pure; 1 μ g) is iodinated [Tejedor, et al., Anal.Biochem., 127, 143 (1982)], and is separated from reactants by gel filtration and ion exchange chromatography. The specific activity of the natural 125 I-IFN may be approximately 100 μ Ci/ μ g protein.

- 5 [429] The above compilation of references for assay methodologies is not exhaustive, and those skilled in the art will recognize other assays useful for testing for the desired end result.

XIII. Measurement of Potency, Functional In Vivo Half-Life, and Pharmacokinetic Parameters

- 10 [430] An important aspect of the invention is the prolonged biological half-life that is obtained by construction of hIFN with or without conjugation of the polypeptide to a water soluble polymer moiety. The rapid decrease of hIFN serum concentrations has made it important to evaluate biological responses to treatment with conjugated and non-conjugated hIFN and variants thereof. Preferably, the conjugated and non-conjugated hIFN and variants
15 thereof of the present invention have prolonged serum half-lives also after i.v. administration, making it possible to measure by, e.g. ELISA method or by a primary screening assay. Another example of an assay for the measurement of in vivo half-life of IFN or variants thereof is described in Kozlowski et al., BioDrugs 15:419 (2001); Bailon et al., Bioconj. Chem. 12:195 (2001); Youngster et al., Current Pharm. Design 8:2139 (2002);
20 U.S. Pat. No. 6,524,570; 6,250,469; 6,180,096; 6,177,074; 6,042,822; 5,981,709; 5,591,974; 5,908,621; 5,738,846, which are incorporated by reference herein. Measurement of in vivo biological half-life is carried out as described herein.

- [431] The potency and functional in vivo half-life of a hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid can be determined according to the protocol described in
25 U.S. Patent No. 5,711,944; 5,382,657, which are incorporated by reference herein.

- [432] Pharmacokinetic parameters for an hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid can be evaluated in normal Sprague-Dawley male rats (N= about 5 animals per treatment group). Animals will receive either a single dose of 25 ug/rat iv or 50 ug/rat sc, and approximately 5-7 blood samples will be taken according to a
30 predefined time course, generally covering about 6 hours for a hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid not conjugated to a water soluble polymer and about 4 days for a hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid and conjugated to a water soluble polymer. Pharmacokinetic data for hIFN is well-studied in several species

AMBX-0019.00US

and can be compared directly to the data obtained for hIFN comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid.

[433] The specific activity of hIFN in accordance with this invention can be determined by various assays known in the art. The biological activity of the hIFN muteins, or fragments thereof, obtained and purified in accordance with this invention can be tested by methods described or referenced herein or known to those skilled in the art.

XIV. Administration and Pharmaceutical Compositions

[434] The polypeptides or proteins of the invention (including but not limited to, hIFN, synthetases, proteins comprising one or more unnatural amino acid, etc.) are optionally employed for therapeutic uses, including but not limited to, in combination with a suitable pharmaceutical carrier. Such compositions, for example, comprise a therapeutically effective amount of the compound, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient. Such a carrier or excipient includes, but is not limited to, saline, buffered saline, dextrose, water, glycerol, ethanol, and/or combinations thereof. The formulation is made to suit the mode of administration. In general, methods of administering proteins are well known in the art and can be applied to administration of the polypeptides of the invention.

[435] Therapeutic compositions comprising one or more polypeptide of the invention are optionally tested in one or more appropriate in vitro and/or in vivo animal models of disease, to confirm efficacy, tissue metabolism, and to estimate dosages, according to methods well known in the art. In particular, dosages can be initially determined by activity, stability or other suitable measures of unnatural herein to natural amino acid homologues (including but not limited to, comparison of an IFN modified to include one or more unnatural amino acids to a natural amino acid IFN), i.e., in a relevant assay.

[436] Administration is by any of the routes normally used for introducing a molecule into ultimate contact with blood or tissue cells. The unnatural amino acid polypeptides of the invention are administered in any suitable manner, optionally with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. Suitable methods of administering such polypeptides in the context of the present invention to a patient are available, and, although more than one route can be used to administer a particular composition, a particular route can often provide a more immediate and more effective action or reaction than another route.

[437] Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers are determined in part by the particular composition being administered, as well as by the particular method used to administer the

composition. Accordingly, there is a wide variety of suitable formulations of pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention.

5 [438] Polypeptide compositions can be administered by a number of routes including, but not limited to oral, intravenous, intraperitoneal, intramuscular, transdermal, subcutaneous, topical, sublingual, or rectal means. Unnatural amino acid polypeptide compositions can also be administered via liposomes. Such administration routes and appropriate formulations are generally known to those of skill in the art.

10 [439] The unnatural amino acid polypeptide, alone or in combination with other suitable components, can also be made into aerosol formulations (i.e., they can be "nebulized") to be administered via inhalation. Aerosol formulations can be placed into pressurized acceptable propellants, such as dichlorodifluoromethane, propane, nitrogen, and the like.

15 [440] Formulations suitable for parenteral administration, such as, for example, by intraarticular (in the joints), intravenous, intramuscular, intradermal, intraperitoneal, and subcutaneous routes, include aqueous and non-aqueous, isotonic sterile injection solutions, which can contain antioxidants, buffers, bacteriostats, and solutes that render the formulation isotonic with the blood of the intended recipient, and aqueous and non-aqueous sterile suspensions that can include suspending agents, solubilizers, thickening agents, stabilizers, and preservatives. The formulations of packaged nucleic acid can be presented in unit-dose or
20 multi-dose sealed containers, such as ampules and vials.

[441] Parenteral administration and intravenous administration are preferred methods of administration. In particular, the routes of administration already in use for natural amino acid homologue therapeutics (including but not limited to, those typically used for EPO, IFN, GM-CSF, IFNs, interleukins, antibodies, and/or any other pharmaceutically
25 delivered protein), along with formulations in current use, provide preferred routes of administration and formulation for the unnatural amino acids of the invention.

[442] The dose administered to a patient, in the context of the present invention, is sufficient to have a beneficial therapeutic response in the patient over time, or, including but not limited to, to inhibit infection by a pathogen, or other appropriate activity, depending on
30 the application. The dose is determined by the efficacy of the particular vector, or formulation, and the activity, stability or serum half-life of the unnatural amino acid polypeptide employed and the condition of the patient, as well as the body weight or surface

area of the patient to be treated. The size of the dose is also determined by the existence, nature, and extent of any adverse side-effects that accompany the administration of a particular vector, formulation, or the like in a particular patient.

5 [443] In determining the effective amount of the vector or formulation to be administered in the treatment or prophylaxis of disease (including but not limited to, cancers, inherited diseases, diabetes, AIDS, or the like), the physician evaluates circulating plasma levels, formulation toxicities, progression of the disease, and/or where relevant, the production of anti-unnatural amino acid polypeptide antibodies.

10 [444] The dose administered, for example, to a 70 kilogram patient, is typically in the range equivalent to dosages of currently-used therapeutic proteins, adjusted for the altered activity or serum half-life of the relevant composition. The vectors of this invention can supplement treatment conditions by any known conventional therapy, including antibody administration, vaccine administration, administration of cytotoxic agents, natural amino acid polypeptides, nucleic acids, nucleotide analogues, biologic response modifiers, and the like.

15 [445] For administration, formulations of the present invention are administered at a rate determined by the LD-50 or ED-50 of the relevant formulation, and/or observation of any side-effects of the unnatural amino acids at various concentrations, including but not limited to, as applied to the mass and overall health of the patient. Administration can be accomplished via single or divided doses.

20 [446] If a patient undergoing infusion of a formulation develops fevers, chills, or muscle aches, he/she receives the appropriate dose of aspirin, ibuprofen, acetaminophen or other pain/fever controlling drug. Patients who experience reactions to the infusion such as fever, muscle aches, and chills are premedicated 30 minutes prior to the future infusions with either aspirin, acetaminophen, or, including but not limited to, diphenhydramine. Meperidine
25 is used for more severe chills and muscle aches that do not quickly respond to antipyretics and antihistamines. Cell infusion is slowed or discontinued depending upon the severity of the reaction.

[447] Human hIFN polypeptides of the invention can be administered directly to a mammalian subject. Administration is by any of the routes normally used for introducing
30 hIFN to a subject. The hIFN polypeptide compositions according to embodiments of the present invention include those suitable for oral, rectal, topical, inhalation (including but not limited to, via an aerosol), buccal (including but not limited to, sub-lingual), vaginal,

parenteral (including but not limited to, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intradermal, intraarticular, intrapleural, intraperitoneal, intracerebral, intraarterial, or intravenous), topical (i.e., both skin and mucosal surfaces, including airway surfaces) and transdermal administration, although the most suitable route in any given case will depend on the nature and severity of the condition being treated. Administration can be either local or systemic. The formulations of compounds can be presented in unit-dose or multi-dose sealed containers, such as ampoules and vials. hIFN polypeptides of the invention can be prepared in a mixture in a unit dosage injectable form (including but not limited to, solution, suspension, or emulsion) with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. hIFN polypeptides of the invention can also be administered by continuous infusion (using, including but not limited to, minipumps such as osmotic pumps), single bolus or slow-release depot formulations.

[448] Formulations suitable for administration include aqueous and non-aqueous solutions, isotonic sterile solutions, which can contain antioxidants, buffers, bacteriostats, and solutes that render the formulation isotonic, and aqueous and non-aqueous sterile suspensions that can include suspending agents, solubilizers, thickening agents, stabilizers, and preservatives. Solutions and suspensions can be prepared from sterile powders, granules, and tablets of the kind previously described.

[449] The pharmaceutical compositions of the invention may comprise a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers are determined in part by the particular composition being administered, as well as by the particular method used to administer the composition. Accordingly, there is a wide variety of suitable formulations of pharmaceutical compositions (including optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers) of the present invention (*see, e.g., Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 17th ed. 1985)).

[450] Suitable carriers include buffers containing phosphate, borate, HEPES, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid; low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates, including glucose, mannose, or dextrans; chelating agents such as EDTA; divalent metal ions such as zinc, cobalt, or copper; sugar alcohols such as mannitol or sorbitol; salt-forming counter ions such as sodium; and/or nonionic surfactants such as TweenTM, PluronicTM, or PEG.

[451] hIFN polypeptides of the invention, including those linked to water soluble polymers such as PEG can also be administered by or as part of sustained-release systems. Sustained-release compositions include, including but not limited to, semi-permeable polymer matrices in the form of shaped articles, including but not limited to, films, or microcapsules. Sustained-release matrices include from biocompatible materials such as poly(2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate) (Langer *et al.*, *J. Biomed. Mater. Res.*, 15: 167-277 (1981); Langer, *Chem. Tech.*, 12: 98-105 (1982), ethylene vinyl acetate (Langer *et al.*, *supra*) or poly-D-(-)-3-hydroxybutyric acid (EP 133,988), polylactides (polylactic acid) (U.S. Patent No. 3,773,919; EP 58,481), polyglycolide (polymer of glycolic acid), polylactide co-glycolide (copolymers of lactic acid and glycolic acid) polyanhydrides, copolymers of L-glutamic acid and gamma-ethyl-L-glutamate (U. Sidman *et al.*, *Biopolymers*, 22, 547-556 (1983), poly(ortho)esters, polypeptides, hyaluronic acid, collagen, chondroitin sulfate, carboxylic acids, fatty acids, phospholipids, polysaccharides, nucleic acids, polyamino acids, amino acids such as phenylalanine, tyrosine, isoleucine, polynucleotides, polyvinyl propylene, polyvinylpyrrolidone and silicone. Sustained-release compositions also include a liposomally entrapped compound. Liposomes containing the compound are prepared by methods known per se: DE 3,218,121; Epstein *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 82: 3688-3692 (1985); Hwang *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 77: 4030-4034 (1980); EP 52,322; EP 36,676; EP 88,046; EP 143,949; EP 142,641; Japanese Pat. Appln. 83-118008; U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,485,045 and 4,544,545; and EP 102,324.

[452] Liposomally entrapped hIFN polypeptides can be prepared by methods described in, e.g., DE 3,218,121; Epstein *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 82: 3688-3692 (1985); Hwang *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 77: 4030-4034 (1980); EP 52,322; EP 36,676; EP 88,046; EP 143,949; EP 142,641; Japanese Pat. Appln. 83-118008; U.S. Patent Nos. 4,485,045 and 4,544,545; and EP 102,324. Composition and size of liposomes are well known or able to be readily determined empirically by one skilled in the art. Some examples of liposomes as described in, e.g., Park JW, *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 92:1327-1331 (1995); Lasic D and Papahadjopoulos D (eds): *MEDICAL APPLICATIONS OF LIPOSOMES* (1998); Drummond DC, *et al.*, *Liposomal drug delivery systems for cancer therapy*, in Teicher B (ed): *CANCER DRUG DISCOVERY AND DEVELOPMENT* (2002); Park JW, *et al.*, *Clin. Cancer Res.* 8:1172-1181 (2002); Nielsen UB, *et al.*, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1591(1-3):109-118 (2002); Mamot C, *et al.*, *Cancer Res.* 63: 3154-3161 (2003).

[453] The dose administered to a patient in the context of the present invention should be sufficient to cause a beneficial response in the subject over time. Generally, the

AMBX-0019.00US

total pharmaceutically effective amount of the hIFN of the present invention administered parenterally per dose is in the range of about 0.01 $\mu\text{g/kg/day}$ to about 100 $\mu\text{g/kg}$, or about 0.05 mg/kg to about 1 mg/kg, of patient body weight, although this is subject to therapeutic discretion. The frequency of dosing is also subject to therapeutic discretion, and may be
5 more frequent or less frequent than the commercially available IFN products approved for use in humans. Generally, a PEGylated hIFN polypeptide of the invention can be administered by any of the routes of administration described above.

XV. *Therapeutic Uses of hIFN Polypeptides of the Invention*

[454] The hIFN polypeptides of the invention are useful for treating a wide range of
10 disorders. Administration of the hIFN products of the present invention results in any of the activities demonstrated by commercially available IFN preparations in humans. The pharmaceutical compositions containing the hIFN glycoprotein products may be formulated at a strength effective for administration by various means to a human patient experiencing disorders that may be affected by IFN agonists or antagonists, such as but not limited to,
15 antiproliferatives, anti-inflammatory, or antivirals are used, either alone or as part of a condition or disease. Average quantities of the hIFN glycoprotein product may vary and in particular should be based upon the recommendations and prescription of a qualified physician. The exact amount of hIFN is a matter of preference subject to such factors as the exact type of condition being treated, the condition of the patient being treated, as well as the
20 other ingredients in the composition. The hIFN of the present invention may thus be used to interrupt or modulate a viral replication cycle, modulate inflammation, or as antiproliferative agents. Among the conditions treatable by the present invention include HCV, HBV, and other viral infections, tumor cell growth or viability, and multiple sclerosis. The invention also provides for administration of a therapeutically effective amount of another active agent
25 such as an anti-cancer chemotherapeutic agent. The amount to be given may be readily determined by one skilled in the art based upon therapy with hIFN.

EXAMPLES

[455] The following examples are offered to illustrate, but not to limit the claimed
30 invention.

embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 41, 45, 46, 48, 49. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 61, 64, 65, 101, 103, 110, 117, 120, 121, 149. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 6, 9, 12, 13, 16, 96, 156, 159, 160, 161, 162. In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109, 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165. In some embodiments, the non-naturally occurring amino acid at these or other positions is linked to a water soluble molecule, including but not limited to positions: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120, 121, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165. In some embodiments the water soluble polymer is coupled to the IFN polypeptide at one or more amino acid positions: 6, 9, 13, 16, 41, 45, 46, 48, 49, 61, 65, 96, 100, 101, 103, 106, 107, 108, 110, 111, 113, 114, 117, 120, 149, 156, 159, 160, 161 and 162 (SEQ ID NO: 2, or the corresponding amino acid in SEQ ID NO: 1, 3, or any other IFN polypeptide). In some embodiments, the IFN polypeptides of the invention comprise one or more non-naturally occurring amino acids at one or more of the following positions providing an antagonist: 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109, 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165.

Example 2

[460] This example details cloning and expression of a modified hIFN polypeptide in *E. coli*.

[461] This example demonstrates how an hIFN polypeptide including a non-naturally encoded amino acid can be expressed in *E. coli*. Nucleotide sequences encoding hIFN are produced generally as described in Matthews et al., (1996) PNAS 93:9471-76. Fetal liver, adult liver, and adult lung cDNA libraries are used as templates for cloning cDNA encoding full length and mature hIFN, with adult liver typically giving the best result. Primers used for cloning full length and mature hIFN are

AMBX-0019.00US

5'[3' SEQ ID NO: 21; and

3'[5' SEQ ID NO: 22, respectively. The reaction conditions for the cloning are 94°C for two minutes, with 30 cycles of 94°C for 30 seconds, 50°C for one minute, 72°C for 2 minutes, and 72°C for 7 minutes, followed by 4°C reaction termination. Molecules are identified as

5 encoding the full length hIFN, the mature form of hIFN lacking the N-terminal signal sequence, each shown in SEQ ID NO:24; and SEQ ID NO:25, respectively. The full length and mature hIFN encoding cDNA is inserted into the pBAD HISc, pET20b, and pET19b expression vectors following optimization of the sequence for cloning and expression without altering amino acid sequence.

10 [462] An introduced translation system that comprises an orthogonal tRNA (O-tRNA) and an orthogonal aminoacyl tRNA synthetase (O-RS) is used to express hIFN containing a non-naturally encoded amino acid. The O-RS preferentially aminoacylates the O-tRNA with a non-naturally encoded amino acid. In turn the translation system inserts the non-naturally encoded amino acid into hIFN, in response to an encoded selector codon. The
15 following O-RS and O-tRNA sequences are used:

SEQ ID NO:4	<i>M. jannaschii</i> mtRNA ^{Tyr} _{CUA}	tRNA
SEQ ID NO:5	<i>HLAD03; an optimized amber suppressor tRNA</i>	tRNA
SEQ ID NO:6	<i>HL325A; an optimized AGGA frameshift suppressor tRNA</i>	tRNA
SEQ ID NO:7	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-L-phenylalanine</i> <i>p-Az-PheRS(6)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:8	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-benzoyl-L-phenylalanine</i> <i>p-BpaRS(1)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:9	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of propargyl-phenylalanine</i> <i>Propargyl-PheRS</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:10	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of propargyl-phenylalanine</i> <i>Propargyl-PheRS</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:11	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of propargyl-phenylalanine</i> <i>Propargyl-PheRS</i>	RS

AMBX-0019.00US

SEQ ID NO:12	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine</i> <i>p-Az-PheRS(1)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:13	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine</i> <i>p-Az-PheRS(3)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:14	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine</i> <i>p-Az-PheRS(4)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:15	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine</i> <i>p-Az-PheRS(2)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:16	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine</i> <i>(LW1)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:17	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine</i> <i>(LW5)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:18	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine</i> <i>(LW6)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:19	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine</i> <i>(AzPheRS-5)</i>	RS
SEQ ID NO:20	<i>Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine</i> <i>(AzPheRS-6)</i>	RS

[463] The transformation of *E. coli* with plasmids containing the modified hIFN gene and the orthogonal aminoacyl tRNA synthetase/tRNA pair (specific for the desired non-naturally encoded amino acid) allows the site-specific incorporation of non-naturally encoded amino acid into the hIFN polypeptide. The transformed *E. coli*, grown at 37° C in media containing between 0.01 – 100 mM of the particular non-naturally encoded amino acid, expresses modified hIFN with high fidelity and efficiency. The His-tagged hIFN containing a non-naturally encoded amino acid is produced by the *E. coli* host cells as inclusion bodies or aggregates. The aggregates are solubilized and affinity purified under denaturing

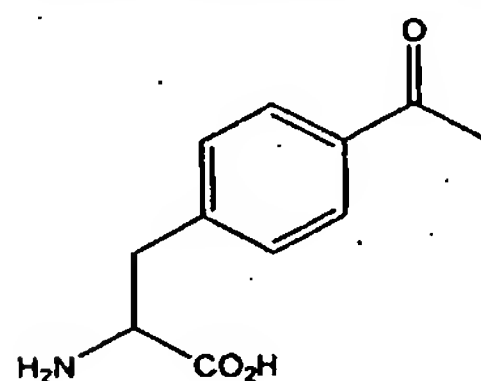
AMBX-0019.00US

conditions in 6M guanidine HCl. Refolding is performed by dialysis at 4°C overnight in 50mM TRIS-HCl, pH8.0, 40μM CuSO₄, and 2% (w/v) Sarkosyl. The material is then dialyzed against 20mM TRIS-HCl, pH 8.0, 100mM NaCl, 2mM CaCl₂, followed by removal of the His-tag. See Boissel et al., (1993) 268:15983-93. Methods for purification of hIFN are well known in the art and are confirmed by SDS-PAGE, Western Blot analyses, or electrospray-ionization ion trap mass spectrometry and the like.

Example 3

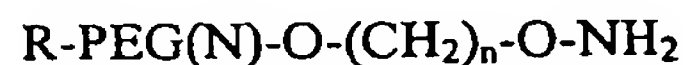
[464] This example details introduction of a carbonyl-containing amino acid and subsequent reaction with a aminooxy-containing PEG:

[465] This Example example demonstrates a method for the generation of a hIFN polypeptide that incorporates a ketone-containing non-naturally encoded amino acid that is subsequently reacted with an aminooxy-containing PEG of approximately 5,000 MW. Each of the residues identified according to the criteria of Example 1 is separately substituted with a non-naturally encoded amino acid having the following structure:



[466] The sequences utilized for site-specific incorporation of p-acetylphenylalanine into hIFN are any of those identified in Example 1 above.

[467] Once modified, the hIFN variant comprising the carbonyl-containing amino acid is reacted with an aminooxy-containing PEG derivative of the form:



where R is methyl, n is 3 and N is approximately 5,000 MW. The purified hIFN containing p-acetylphenylalanine dissolved at 10 mg/mL in 25 mM MES (Sigma Chemical, St. Louis, MO) pH 6.0, 25 mM Hepes (Sigma Chemical, St. Louis, MO) pH 7.0, or in 10 mM Sodium Acetate (Sigma Chemical, St. Louis, MO) pH 4.5, is reacted with a 10 to 100-fold excess of aminooxy-containing PEG, and then stirred for 10 – 16 hours at room temperature (Jencks, W. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 1959, 81, pp 475). The PEG-hIFN is then diluted into appropriate buffer for immediate purification and analysis.

Example 4

[468] Conjugation with a PEG consisting of a hydroxylamine group linked to the PEG via an amide linkage.

[469] A PEG reagent having the following structure is coupled to a ketone-
5 containing non-naturally encoded amino acid using the procedure described in Example 3:



where R = methyl, n=4 and N is approximately 20,000 MW. The reaction, purification, and analysis conditions are as described in Example 3.

Example 5

10 [470] This example details the introduction of two distinct non-naturally encoded amino acids into hIFN

[471] This example demonstrates a method for the generation of a hIFN polypeptide that incorporates non-naturally encoded amino acid comprising a ketone functionality at two positions among the residues identified according to Example 1, wherein X* represents a
15 non-naturally encoded amino acid. The hIFN polypeptide is prepared as described in Examples 1 and 2, except that the suppressor codon is introduced at two distinct sites within the nucleic acid.

Example 6

20 [472] This example details conjugation of hIFN polypeptide to a hydrazide-containing PEG and subsequent *in situ* reduction

[473] A hIFN polypeptide incorporating a carbonyl-containing amino acid is prepared according to the procedure described in Examples 2 and 3. Once modified, a hydrazide-containing PEG having the following structure is conjugated to the hIFN
25 polypeptide:



where R = methyl, n=2 and N = 10,000 MW and X is a carbonyl (C=O) group. The purified hIFN containing *p*-acetylphenylalanine is dissolved at between 0.1-10 mg/mL in 25 mM MES (Sigma Chemical, St. Louis, MO) pH 6.0, 25 mM Hepes (Sigma Chemical, St. Louis,
30 MO) pH 7.0, or in 10 mM Sodium Acetate (Sigma Chemical, St. Louis, MO) pH 4.5, is reacted with a 10 to 100-fold excess of aminoxy-containing PEG, and the corresponding hydrazone is reduced *in situ* by addition of stock 1M NaCNBH₃ (Sigma Chemical, St. Louis, MO), dissolved in H₂O, to a final concentration of 10-50 mM. Reactions are carried out in

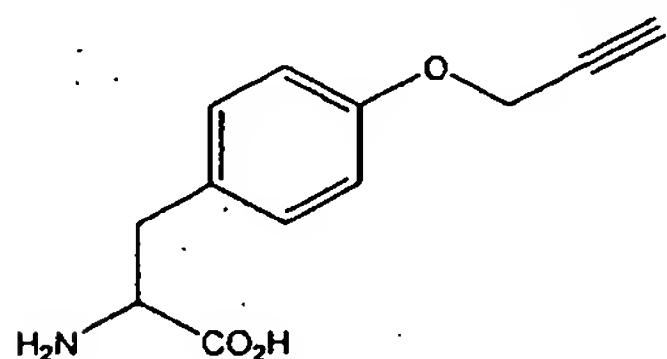
AMBX-0019.00US

the dark at 4 °C to RT for 18-24 hours. Reactions are stopped by addition of 1 M Tris (Sigma Chemical, St. Louis, MO) at about pH 7.6 to a final Tris concentration of 50 mM or diluted into appropriate buffer for immediate purification.

Example 7

5 [474] This example details introduction of an alkyne-containing amino acid into hIFN and derivatization with mPEG-azide.

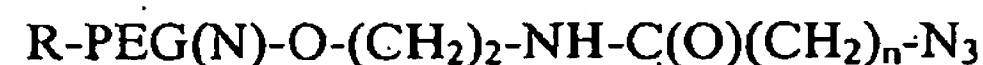
[475] Any of the residues identified according to Example 1 are substituted with the following non-naturally encoded amino acid:



10 [476] The sequences utilized for site-specific incorporation of p-propargyl-tyrosine into hIFN are SEQ ID NO 2 (hIFN), SEQ ID NO:4 (muttRNA), and 9, 10 or 11 described in Example 2 above. The hIFN polypeptide containing the propargyl tyrosine is expressed in *E. coli* and purified using the conditions described in Example 3.

[477] The purified hIFN containing propargyl-tyrosine dissolved at between 0.1-10
15 mg/mL in PB buffer (100 mM sodium phosphate, 0.15 M NaCl, pH = 8) and a 10 to 1000-fold excess of an azide-containing PEG is added to the reaction mixture. A catalytic amount of CuSO₄ and Cu wire are then added to the reaction mixture. After the mixture is incubated (including but not limited to, about 4 hours at room temperature or 37° C, or overnight at 4 °C), H₂O is added and the mixture is filtered through a dialysis membrane. The sample can be
20 analyzed for the addition, including but not limited to, by similar procedures described in Example 3.

[478] In this Example, the PEG will have the following structure:



where R is methyl, n is 4 and N is 10,000 MW.

25

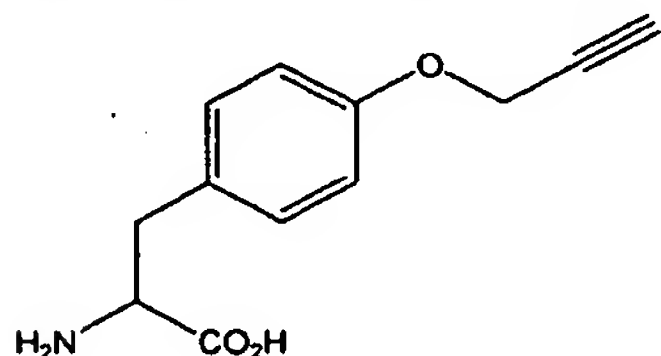
Example 8

[479] This example details substitution of a large, hydrophobic amino acid in hIFN with propargyl tyrosine.

[480] A Phe, Trp or Tyr residue present within one the following regions of hIFN: 1-
30 9 (N-terminus), 10-21 (A helix), 22-39 (region between A helix and B helix), 40-75 (B helix),

AMBX-0019.00US

76-77 (region between B helix and C helix), 78-100 (C helix), 101-110 (region between C helix and D helix), 111-132 (D helix), 133-136 (region between D and E helix) 137-155 (E helix) 156-165 (C-terminus), (as in SEQ ID NO:2 or the corresponding amino acids of other IFN polypeptides), is substituted with the following non-naturally encoded amino acid as described in Example 3:



[481] Once modified, a PEG is attached to the hIFN variant comprising the alkyne-containing amino acid. The PEG will have the following structure:



10 and coupling procedures would follow those in Example 7. This will generate a hIFN variant comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid that is approximately isosteric with one of the naturally-occurring, large hydrophobic amino acids and which is modified with a PEG derivative at a distinct site within the polypeptide.

Example 9

15 [482] This example details generation of a hIFN homodimer, heterodimer, homomultimer, or heteromultimer separated by one or more PEG linkers.

[483] The alkyne-containing hIFN variant produced in Example 7 is reacted with a bifunctional PEG derivative of the form:



20 where n is 4 and the PEG has an average MW of approximately 5,000, to generate the corresponding hIFN homodimer where the two hIFN molecules are physically separated by PEG. In an analogous manner a hIFN polypeptide may be coupled to one or more other polypeptides to form heterodimers, homomultimers, or heteromultimers. Coupling, purification, and analyses will be performed as in Examples 7 and 3.

25

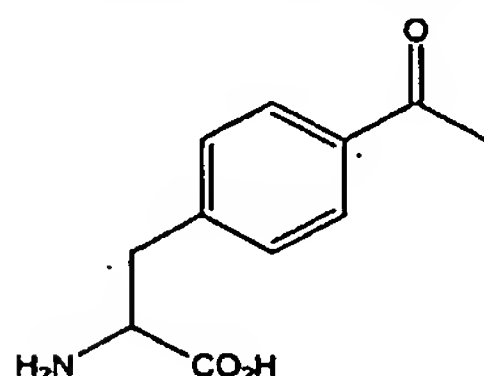
Example 10

[484] This example details coupling of a saccharide moiety to hIFN.

[485] One residue of the following is substituted with the non-natural encoded amino acid below: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31,

AMBX-0019.00US

32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120, 121, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165 (as in SEQ ID NO:2, or the
5 corresponding amino acids of other IFN polypeptides), as described in Example 3.



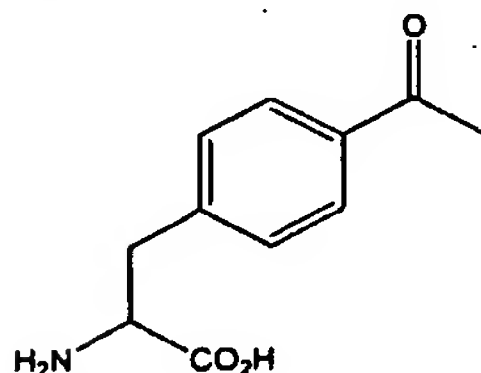
[486] Once modified, the hIFN variant comprising the carbonyl-containing amino acid is reacted with a β -linked aminooxy analogue of N-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc). The hIFN variant (10 mg/mL) and the aminooxy saccharide (21mM) are mixed in aqueous
10 100mM sodium acetate buffer (pH 5.5) and incubated at 37° C for 7 to 26 hours. A second saccharide is coupled to the first enzymatically by incubating the saccharide-conjugated hIFN (5mg/mL) with UDP-galactose (16mM) and β -1,4-galactosyltransferase (0.4 units/mL) in 150mM HEPES buffer (pH 7.4) for 48 hours at ambient temperature (Schanbacher et al. *J. Biol. Chem.* 1970, 245, 5057-5061).

15

Example 11

[487] This example details generation of a PEGylated hIFN antagonist.

[488] One of the following residues, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109, 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165, is
20 substituted with the following non-naturally encoded amino acid as described in Example 3.



[489] Once modified, the hIFN variant comprising the carbonyl-containing amino acid will be reacted with an aminooxy-containing PEG derivative of the form:
R-PEG(N)-O-(CH₂)_n-O-NH₂

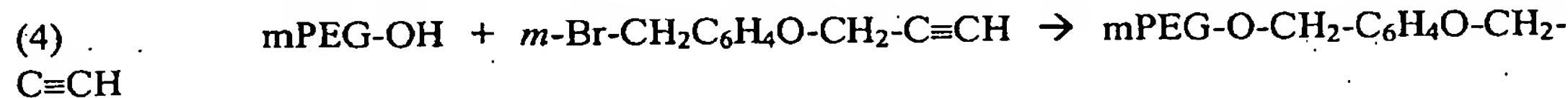
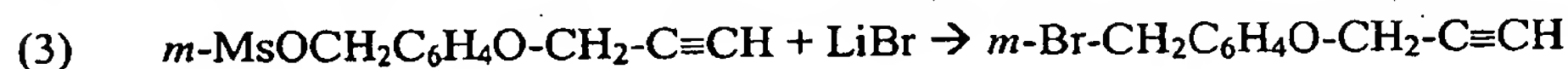
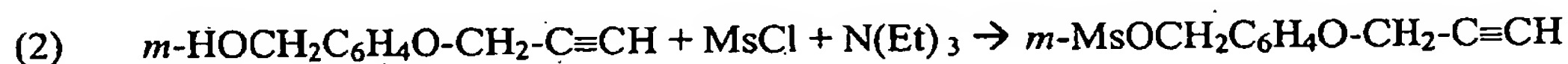
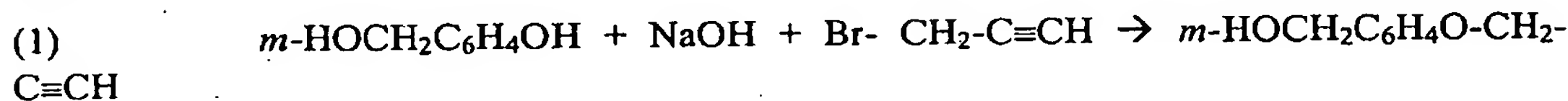
resulting mixture was heated to reflux for 2 h. Water (1 mL) was then added and the solvent was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added CH₂Cl₂ (25 mL) and the organic layer was separated, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, and the volume was reduced to approximately 2 mL. This CH₂Cl₂ solution was added to diethyl ether (150 mL) drop-wise. The resulting precipitate was collected, washed with several portions of cold diethyl ether, and dried to afford propargyl-O-PEG.

Example 15



[493] The mPEG-OH with a molecular weight of 20,000 Da (mPEG-OH 20 kDa; 2.0 g, 0.1 mmol, Sunbio) was treated with NaH (12 mg, 0.5 mmol) in THF (35 mL). Fifty equivalents of 5-chloro-1-pentyne (0.53 mL, 5 mmol, Aldrich) and a catalytic amount of KI were then added to the mixture. The resulting mixture was heated to reflux for 16 hours. Water (1 mL) was then added and the solvent was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added CH₂Cl₂ (25 mL) and the organic layer was separated, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, and the volume was reduced to approximately 2 mL. This CH₂Cl₂ solution was added to diethyl ether (150 mL) drop-wise. The resulting precipitate was collected, washed with several portions of cold diethyl ether, and dried to afford the corresponding alkyne.

Example 16



[494] To a solution of 3-hydroxybenzylalcohol (2.4 g, 20 mmol) in THF (50 mL) and water (2.5 mL) was first added powdered sodium hydroxide (1.5 g, 37.5 mmol) and then a solution of propargyl bromide, dissolved as an 80% weight solution in xylene (3.36 mL, 30 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated at reflux for 6 hours. To the mixture was added 10% citric acid (2.5 mL) and the solvent was removed under vacuum. The residue was

extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 15 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with saturated NaCl solution (10 mL), dried over MgSO₄ and concentrated to give the 3-propargyloxybenzyl alcohol.

[495] Methanesulfonyl chloride (2.5 g, 15.7 mmol) and triethylamine (2.8 mL, 20 mmol) were added to a solution of compound 3 (2.0 g, 11.0 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ at 0 °C and the reaction was placed in the refrigerator for 16 hours. A usual work-up afforded the mesylate as a pale yellow oil. This oil (2.4 g, 9.2 mmol) was dissolved in THF (20 mL) and LiBr (2.0 g, 23.0 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was heated to reflux for 1 hour and was then cooled to room temperature. To the mixture was added water (2.5 mL) and the solvent was removed under vacuum. The residue was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 15 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with saturated NaCl solution (10 mL), dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, and concentrated to give the desired bromide.

[496] mPEG-OH 20 kDa (1.0 g, 0.05 mmol, Sunbio) was dissolved in THF (20 mL) and the solution was cooled in an ice bath. NaH (6 mg, 0.25 mmol) was added with vigorous stirring over a period of several minutes followed by addition of the bromide obtained from above (2.55 g, 11.4 mmol) and a catalytic amount of KI. The cooling bath was removed and the resulting mixture was heated to reflux for 12 hours. Water (1.0) was added to the mixture and the solvent was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added CH₂Cl₂ (25 mL) and the organic layer was separated, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, and the volume was reduced to approximately 2 mL. Dropwise addition to an ether solution (150 mL) resulted in a white precipitate, which was collected to yield the PEG derivative.

Example 17

25
$$\text{mPEG-NH}_2 + \text{X-C(O)-(CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{-C}\equiv\text{CR}' \rightarrow \text{mPEG-NH-C(O)-(CH}_2\text{)}_n\text{-C}\equiv\text{CR}'$$

[497] The terminal alkyne-containing poly(ethylene glycol) polymers can also be obtained by coupling a poly(ethylene glycol) polymer containing a terminal functional group to a reactive molecule containing the alkyne functionality as shown above.

30 Example 18

(1)
$$\text{HO}_2\text{C-(CH}_2\text{)}_2\text{-C}\equiv\text{CH} + \text{NHS} + \text{DCC} \rightarrow \text{NHSO-C(O)-(CH}_2\text{)}_2\text{-C}\equiv\text{CH}$$

(2)
$$\text{mPEG-NH}_2 + \text{NHSO-C(O)-(CH}_2\text{)}_2\text{-C}\equiv\text{CH} \rightarrow \text{mPEG-NH-C(O)-(CH}_2\text{)}_2\text{-C}\equiv\text{CH}$$

[498] 4-pentynoic acid (2.943 g, 3.0 mmol) was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (25 mL). N-hydroxysuccinimide (3.80 g, 3.3 mmol) and DCC (4.66 g, 3.0 mmol) were added and the solution was stirred overnight at room temperature. The resulting crude NHS ester 7 was used in the following reaction without further purification.

5 [499] mPEG-NH₂ with a molecular weight of 5,000 Da (mPEG-NH₂, 1 g, Sunbio) was dissolved in THF (50 mL) and the mixture was cooled to 4 °C. NHS ester 7 (400 mg, 0.4 mmol) was added portion-wise with vigorous stirring. The mixture was allowed to stir for 3 hours while warming to room temperature. Water (2 mL) was then added and the solvent was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added CH₂Cl₂ (50 mL) and the
10 organic layer was separated, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, and the volume was reduced to approximately 2 mL. This CH₂Cl₂ solution was added to ether (150 mL) drop-wise. The resulting precipitate was collected and dried in vacuo.

Example 19

15 [500] This Example represents the preparation of the methane sulfonyl ester of poly(ethylene glycol), which can also be referred to as the methanesulfonate or mesylate of poly(ethylene glycol). The corresponding tosylate and the halides can be prepared by similar procedures.

20 $\text{mPEG-OH} + \text{CH}_3\text{SO}_2\text{Cl} + \text{N}(\text{Et})_3 \rightarrow \text{mPEG-O-SO}_2\text{CH}_3 \rightarrow \text{mPEG-N}_3$

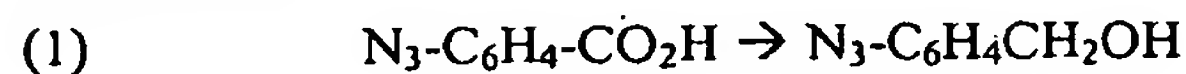
[501] The mPEG-OH (MW = 3,400, 25 g, 10 mmol) in 150 mL of toluene was azeotropically distilled for 2 hours under nitrogen and the solution was cooled to room temperature. To the solution was added 40 mL of dry CH₂Cl₂ and 2.1 mL of dry
25 triethylamine (15 mmol). The solution was cooled in an ice bath and 1.2 mL of distilled methanesulfonyl chloride (15 mmol) was added dropwise. The solution was stirred at room temperature under nitrogen overnight and the reaction was quenched by adding 2 mL of absolute ethanol. The mixture was evaporated under vacuum to remove solvents, primarily those other than toluene, filtered, concentrated again under vacuum, and then precipitated
30 into 100 mL of diethyl ether. The filtrate was washed with several portions of cold diethyl ether and dried in vacuo to afford the mesylate.

[502] The mesylate (20 g, 8 mmol) was dissolved in 75 mL of THF and the solution was cooled to 4 °C. To the cooled solution was added sodium azide (1.56 g, 24 mmol). The

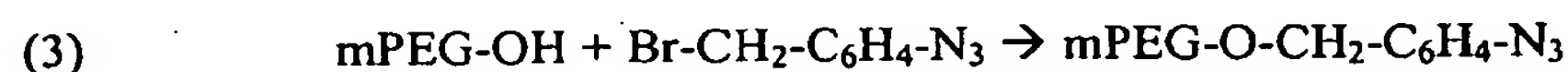
reaction was heated to reflux under nitrogen for 2 hours. The solvents were then evaporated and the residue diluted with CH₂Cl₂ (50 mL). The organic fraction was washed with NaCl solution and dried over anhydrous MgSO₄. The volume was reduced to 20 ml and the product was precipitated by addition to 150 ml of cold dry ether.

5

Example 20



10

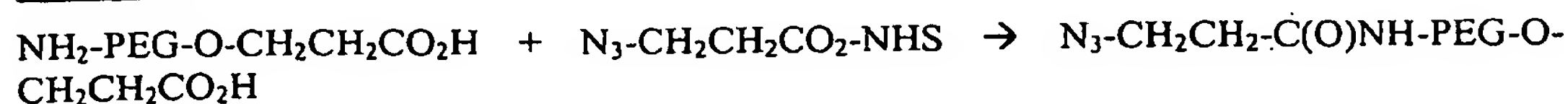


[503] 4-azidobenzyl alcohol can be produced using the method described in U.S. Patent 5,998,595. Methanesulfonyl chloride (2.5 g, 15.7 mmol) and triethylamine (2.8 mL, 20 mmol) were added to a solution of 4-azidobenzyl alcohol (1.75 g, 11.0 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ at 0 °C and the reaction was placed in the refrigerator for 16 hours. A usual work-up afforded the mesylate as a pale yellow oil. This oil (9.2 mmol) was dissolved in THF (20 mL) and LiBr (2.0 g, 23.0 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was heated to reflux for 1 hour and was then cooled to room temperature. To the mixture was added water (2.5 mL) and the solvent was removed under vacuum. The residue was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 15 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with saturated NaCl solution (10 mL), dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, and concentrated to give the desired bromide.

[504] mPEG-OH 20 kDa (2.0 g, 0.1 mmol, Sunbio) was treated with NaH (12 mg, 0.5 mmol) in THF (35 mL) and the bromide (3.32 g, 15 mmol) was added to the mixture along with a catalytic amount of KI. The resulting mixture was heated to reflux for 12 hours. Water (1.0) was added to the mixture and the solvent was removed under vacuum. To the residue was added CH₂Cl₂ (25 mL) and the organic layer was separated, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, and the volume was reduced to approximately 2 mL. Dropwise addition to an ether solution (150 mL) resulted in a precipitate, which was collected to yield mPEG-O-CH₂-C₆H₄-N₃.

30

Example 21



35

[505] $\text{NH}_2\text{-PEG-O-CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}$ (MW 3,400 Da, 2.0 g) was dissolved in a saturated aqueous solution of NaHCO_3 (10 mL) and the solution was cooled to 0 °C. 3-azido-1-N-hydroxysuccinimido propionate (5 equiv.) was added with vigorous stirring. After 3 hours, 20 mL of H_2O was added and the mixture was stirred for an additional 45 minutes at room temperature. The pH was adjusted to 3 with 0.5 N H_2SO_4 and NaCl was added to a concentration of approximately 15 wt%. The reaction mixture was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (100 mL x 3), dried over Na_2SO_4 and concentrated. After precipitation with cold diethyl ether, the product was collected by filtration and dried under vacuum to yield the omega-carboxy-azide PEG derivative.

10

Example 22



[506] To a solution of lithium acetylide (4 equiv.), prepared as known in the art and cooled to -78°C in THF, is added dropwise a solution of mPEG-OMs dissolved in THF with vigorous stirring. After 3 hours, the reaction is permitted to warm to room temperature and quenched with the addition of 1 mL of butanol. 20 mL of H_2O is then added and the mixture was stirred for an additional 45 minutes at room temperature. The pH was adjusted to 3 with 0.5 N H_2SO_4 and NaCl was added to a concentration of approximately 15 wt%. The reaction mixture was extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (100 mL x 3), dried over Na_2SO_4 and concentrated. After precipitation with cold diethyl ether, the product was collected by filtration and dried under vacuum to yield the omega-carboxy-azide PEG derivative.

20

Example 23

[507] The azide- and acetylene-containing amino acids were incorporated site-selectively into proteins using the methods described in L. Wang, et al., (2001), Science 292:498-500, J.W. Chin et al., Science 301:964-7 (2003)), J. W. Chin et al., (2002), Journal of the American Chemical Society 124:9026-9027; J. W. Chin, & P. G. Schultz, (2002), ChemBioChem 11:1135-1137; J. W. Chin, et al., (2002), PNAS United States of America 99:11020-11024; and, L. Wang, & P. G. Schultz, (2002), Chem. Comm., 1-10. Once the amino acids were incorporated, the cycloaddition react was carried out with 0.01 mM protein in phosphate buffer (PB), pH 8, in the presence of 2 mM PEG derivative, 1 mM CuSO_4 , and ~1 mg Cu-wire for 4 hours at 37 °C.

30

Example 24

[508] In Vitro and In Vivo Activity of PEGylated hIFN

[509] PEG-hIFN, unmodified hIFN and buffer solution are administered to mice or
5 rats. The results will show superior activity and prolonged half life of the PEGylated hIFN of
the present invention compared to unmodified hIFN which is indicated by significantly
increased amounts of neutrophils and a shift of white blood cell count maximum using the
same dose per mouse.

[510] Cell Binding Assays.

10 Cells (3×10^6) are incubated in duplicate in PBS/1% BSA (100 μ l) in the absence or presence
of various concentrations (volume: 10 μ l) of unlabeled IFN, hIFN or GM-CSF and in the
presence of 125 I-IFN (approx. 100,000 cpm or 1 ng) at 0°C for 90 minutes (total volume: 120
 μ l). Cells are then resuspended and layered over 200 μ l ice cold FCS in a 350 μ l plastic
centrifuge tube and centrifuged (1000 g; 1 minute). The pellet is collected by cutting off the
15 end of the tube and pellet and supernatant counted separately in a gamma counter (Packard).

[511] Specific binding (cpm) is determined as total binding in the absence of a
competitor (mean of duplicates) minus binding (cpm) in the presence of 100-fold excess of
unlabeled IFN (non-specific binding). The non-specific binding is measured for each of the
cell types used. Experiments are run on separate days using the same preparation of 125 I-IFN
20 and should display internal consistency. 125 I-IFN demonstrates binding to the Daudi cells.
The binding is inhibited in a dose dependent manner by unlabeled natural IFN or hIFN, but
not by GM-CSF or other negative control. The ability of hIFN to compete for the binding of
natural 125 I-IFN, similar to natural IFN, suggests that the receptors recognize both forms
equally well.

25 [512] Measurement of the in vivo Half-life of Conjugated and Non-conjugated hIFN
and Variants Thereof. Male Sprague Dawley rats (about 7 weeks old) are used. On the day
of administration, the weight of each animal is measured. 100 μ g per kg body weight of the
non-conjugated and conjugated hIFN samples are each injected intravenously into the tail
vein of three rats. At 1 minute, 30 minutes, 1, 2, 4, 6, and 24 hours after the injection, 500 μ l
30 of blood is withdrawn from each rat while under CO₂ -anesthesia. The blood samples are
stored at room temperature for 1.5 hours followed by isolation of serum by centrifugation (4°
C, 18000xg for 5 minutes). The serum samples are stored at -80° C until the day of analysis.
The amount of active IFN in the serum samples is quantified by the IFN in vitro activity
assay after thawing the samples on ice.

[513] Antiviral activity There are many assays known to those skilled in the art that measure the degree of resistance of cells to viruses (McNeill, 1981). These assays generally can be categorized into three types: inhibition of cytopathic effect; virus plaque formation; and reduction of virus yield. Viral cytopathic effect assays measure the degree of protection
5 induced in cell cultures pretreated with IFN and subsequently infected with viruses. Vesicular stomatitis virus, for instance, is an appropriate virus for use in such an assay. This type of assay is convenient for screening numerous different IFNs, as it can be performed in 96-well plates. Plaque-reduction assays measure the resistance of IFN-treated cell cultures to a plaque-forming virus (for instance, measles virus). One benefit to this assay is that it allows
10 precise measurement of a 50% reduction in plaque formation. Finally, virus yield assays measure the amount of virus released from cells during, for instance, a single growth cycle. Such assays are useful for testing the antiviral activity of IFNs against viruses that do not cause cytopathic effects, or that do not build plaques in target-cell cultures. The multiplicity of infection (moi) is an important factor to consider when using either plaque-reduction or
15 virus-yield assays.

[514] Other clinically important interferon characteristics are also easily assayed in the laboratory setting. One such characteristic is the ability of an interferon polypeptide to bind to specific cell-surface receptors. For instance, some IFN α -2bs exhibit different cell-surface properties compared to IFN α -2b, the IFN most widely used in clinical trials. While
20 IFN α -2b is an effective antiviral agent, it causes significant adverse side effects. Interferons that exhibit distinct binding properties from IFN α -2b may not cause the same adverse effects. Therefore, interferons that compete poorly with IFN α -2b for binding sites on cells are of clinical interest. Competitive interferon binding assays are well known in the art (Hu et al., 1993; Di Marco et al., 1994, Supra). In general, such assays involve incubation of cell culture
25 cells with a mixture of ¹²⁵I-labeled IFN α -2b and an unlabeled interferon of interest. Unbound interferon is then removed, and the amount of bound label (and by extension, bound ¹²⁵I-labeled IFN α -2b) is measured. By comparing the amount of label that binds to cells in the presence or absence of competing interferons, relative binding affinities can be calculated.

[515] Another prominent effect of IFN α 's is their ability to inhibit cell growth,
30 which is of major importance in determining anti-tumor action. Growth inhibition assays are well established, and usually depend on cell counts or uptake of tritiated thymidine ([³H]thymidine) or another radiolabel. The human lymphoblastoid Daudi cell line has proven to be extremely sensitive to IFN α 's, and it has been used to measure antiproliferative activity in many IFN α 's and derived hybrid polypeptides (Meister et al., 1986). Use of this cell line has

AMBX-0019.00US

been facilitated by its ability to be grown in suspension cultures (Evinger and Pestka, 1981). IFN α 's also exhibit many immunomodulatory activities (Zoon et al., 1986).

[516] Although IFNs were first discovered by virologists, their first clinical use (in 1979) was as therapeutic agents for myeloma (Joshua et al., 1997). IFN α 's have since been shown to be efficacious against a myriad of diseases of viral, malignant, angiogenic, allergic, inflammatory, and fibrotic origin (Tilg, 1997). It has also proven efficacious in the treatment of metastatic renal carcinoma and chronic myeloid leukemia (Williams and Linch, 1997). Clinical uses of IFNs are reviewed in Gresser (1997) and Pfeffer (1997).

10 Example 25

[517] Human Clinical Trial of the Safety and/or Efficacy of PEGylated hIFN Comprising a Non-naturally Encoded Amino Acid.

[518] Objective To compare the safety and pharmacokinetics of subcutaneously administered PEGylated recombinant human hIFN comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid with the commercially available hIFN products Roferon A® or Intron A®.

[519] Patients Eighteen healthy volunteers ranging between 20-40 years of age and weighing between 60-90 kg are enrolled in the study. The subjects will have no clinically significant abnormal laboratory values for hematology or serum chemistry, and a negative urine toxicology screen, HIV screen, and hepatitis B surface antigen. They should not have any evidence of the following: hypertension; a history of any primary hematologic disease; history of significant hepatic, renal, cardiovascular, gastrointestinal, genitourinary, metabolic, neurologic disease; a history of anemia or seizure disorder; a known sensitivity to bacterial or mammalian-derived products, PEG, or human serum albumin; habitual and heavy consumer to beverages containing caffeine; participation in any other clinical trial or had blood transfused or donated within 30 days of study entry; had exposure to hIFN within three months of study entry; had an illness within seven days of study entry; and have significant abnormalities on the pre-study physical examination or the clinical laboratory evaluations within 14 days of study entry. All subjects are evaluable for safety and all blood collections for pharmacokinetic analysis are collected as scheduled. All studies are performed with institutional ethics committee approval and patient consent.

[520] Study Design This will be a Phase I, single-center, open-label, randomized, two-period crossover study in healthy male volunteers. Eighteen subjects are randomly

AMBX-0019.00US

assigned to one of two treatment sequence groups (nine subjects/group). IFN is administered over two separate dosing periods as a bolus s.c. injection in the upper thigh using equivalent doses of the PEGylated hIFN comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid and the commercially available product chosen. The dose and frequency of administration of the commercially available product is as instructed in the package label. Additional dosing, dosing frequency, or other parameter as desired, using the commercially available products may be added to the study by including additional groups of subjects. Each dosing period is separated by a 14-day washout period. Subjects are confined to the study center at least 12 hours prior to and 72 hours following dosing for each of the two dosing periods, but not between dosing periods. Additional groups of subjects may be added if there are to be additional dosing, frequency, or other parameter, to be tested for the PEGylated hIFN as well. Multiple formulations of IFN that are approved for human use may be used in this study. Roferon A® and/or Intron A® are commercially available IFN products approved for human use. The experimental formulation of hIFN is the PEGylated hIFN comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid.

[521] Blood Sampling Serial blood is drawn by direct vein puncture before and after administration of hIFN. Venous blood samples (5 mL) for determination of serum IFN concentrations are obtained at about 30, 20, and 10 minutes prior to dosing (3 baseline samples) and at approximately the following times after dosing: 30 minutes and at 1, 2, 5, 8, 12, 15, 18, 24, 30, 36, 48, 60 and 72 hours. Each serum sample is divided into two aliquots. All serum samples are stored at -20°C. Serum samples are shipped on dry ice. Fasting clinical laboratory tests (hematology, serum chemistry, and urinalysis) are performed immediately prior to the initial dose on day 1, the morning of day 4, immediately prior to dosing on day 16, and the morning of day 19.

25 [522] Bioanalytical Methods A radioimmunoassay (RIA) kit procedure (Diagnostic Systems Laboratory [DSL], Webster TX), is used for the determination of serum IFN concentrations.

[523] Safety Determinations Vital signs are recorded immediately prior to each dosing (Days 1 and 16), and at 6, 24, 48, and 72 hours after each dosing. Safety determinations are based on the incidence and type of adverse events and the changes in clinical laboratory tests from baseline. In addition, changes from pre-study in vital sign measurements, including blood pressure, and physical examination results are evaluated.

[524] Data Analysis Post-dose serum concentration values are corrected for pre-dose baseline IFN concentrations by subtracting from each of the post-dose values the mean baseline IFN concentration determined from averaging the IFN levels from the three samples collected at 30, 20, and 10 minutes before dosing. Pre-dose serum IFN concentrations are not included in the calculation of the mean value if they are below the quantification level of the assay. Pharmacokinetic parameters are determined from serum concentration data corrected for baseline IFN concentrations. Pharmacokinetic parameters are calculated by model independent methods on a Digital Equipment Corporation VAX 8600 computer system using the latest version of the BIOAVL software. The following pharmacokinetics parameters are determined: peak serum concentration (C_{max}); time to peak serum concentration (t_{max}); area under the concentration-time curve (AUC) from time zero to the last blood sampling time (AUC_{0-72}) calculated with the use of the linear trapezoidal rule; and terminal elimination half-life ($t_{1/2}$), computed from the elimination rate constant. The elimination rate constant is estimated by linear regression of consecutive data points in the terminal linear region of the log-linear concentration-time plot. The mean, standard deviation (SD), and coefficient of variation (CV) of the pharmacokinetic parameters are calculated for each treatment. The ratio of the parameter means (preserved formulation/non-preserved formulation) is calculated.

[525] Safety Results The incidence of adverse events is equally distributed across the treatment groups. There are no clinically significant changes from baseline or pre-study clinical laboratory tests or blood pressures, and no notable changes from pre-study in physical examination results and vital sign measurements. The safety profiles for the two treatment groups should appear similar.

[526] Pharmacokinetic Results Mean serum IFN concentration-time profiles (uncorrected for baseline IFN levels) in all 18 subjects after receiving a single dose of commercially available hIFN (e.g. Roferon A® or Intron A®) are compared to the PEGylated hIFN comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid at each time point measured. All subjects should have pre-dose baseline IFN concentrations within the normal physiologic range. Pharmacokinetic parameters are determined from serum data corrected for pre-dose mean baseline IFN concentrations and the C_{max} and t_{max} are determined. The mean t_{max} for hIFN (e.g. Roferon®) is significantly shorter than the t_{max} for the PEGylated hIFN comprising the non-naturally encoded amino acid. Terminal half-life values are significantly

shorter for hIFN (e.g. Intron A®) compared with the terminal half-life for the PEGylated hIFN comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid.

5 [527] Although the present study is conducted in healthy male subjects, similar absorption characteristics and safety profiles would be anticipated in other patient populations; such as male or female patients with cancer or chronic renal failure, pediatric renal failure patients, patients in autologous predeposit programs, or patients scheduled for elective surgery.

10 [528] In conclusion, subcutaneously administered single doses of PEGylated hIFN comprising non-naturally encoded amino acid will be safe and well tolerated by healthy male subjects. Based on a comparative incidence of adverse events, clinical laboratory values, vital signs, and physical examination results, the safety profiles of hIFN (e.g. Roferon A®) and PEGylated hIFN comprising non-naturally encoded amino acid will be equivalent. The PEGylated hIFN comprising non-naturally encoded amino acid potentially provides large clinical utility to patients and health care providers.

15 [529] It is understood that the examples and embodiments described herein are for illustrative purposes only and that various modifications or changes in light thereof will be suggested to persons skilled in the art and are to be included within the spirit and purview of this application and scope of the appended claims. All publications, patents, and patent applications cited herein are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety for all purposes.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

- 1 1. A hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid.
- 1 2. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the hIFN polypeptide is linked to at
2 least one additional hIFN polypeptide.
- 1 3. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is linked to a water soluble polymer.
- 1 4. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 3, wherein the water soluble polymer
2 comprises a poly(ethylene glycol) moiety.

1 5. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 4, wherein the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule
2 is a bifunctional polymer.

1 6. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 5, wherein the bifunctional polymer is linked
2 to a second polypeptide.

1 7. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 6, wherein the second polypeptide is a non-
2 hIFN polypeptide.

1 8. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 4, comprising at least two amino acids linked
2 to a water soluble polymer comprising a poly(ethylene glycol) moiety.

1 9. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 8, wherein at least one amino acid linked to
2 said water soluble polymer is a non-naturally encoded amino acid.

1 10. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is substituted at a position selected from the group consisting of residues 1-9, 10-21, 22-
3 39, 40-75, 76-77, 78-100, 101-110, 111-132, 133-136, 137-155, and 156-165, from SEQ ID
4 NO: 2.

1 11. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is substituted at a position selected from the group consisting of residues 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6,
3 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46,
4 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90,
5 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120,
6 121, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159,
7 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165 from SEQ ID NO: 2.

1 12. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 11, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is substituted at a position selected from the group consisting of residues 100, 106, 107,
3 108, 111, 113, 114 and a combination thereof from SEQ ID NO: 2.

1 13. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 11, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is substituted at a position selected from the group consisting of residues 41, 45, 46, 48,
3 49, and a combination thereof from SEQ ID NO: 2.

1 14. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 11, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is substituted at a position selected from the group consisting of residues 61, 64, 65, 101,
3 103, 110, 117, 120, 121, 149, and a combination thereof from SEQ ID NO: 2.

1 15. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 4, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is substituted at a position selected from the group consisting of 24, 36, 38, 58, 65, 83,
3 86, 113, 115, 126, 6, 9, 12, 13, 16, 96, 156, 159, 160, 161, 162 and a combination thereof,
4 from SEQ ID NO: 2.

1 16. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the hIFN polypeptide comprises a
2 substitution, addition or deletion that increases affinity of the hIFN polypeptide for an hIFN
3 receptor.

1 17. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the hIFN polypeptide comprises an
2 amino acid substitution, addition or deletion that increases the stability or solubility of the
3 hIFN polypeptide.

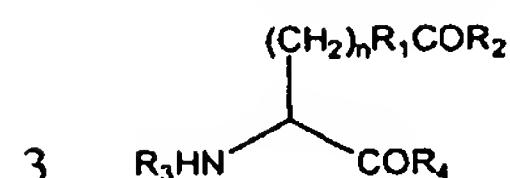
1 18. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 16, comprising an amino acid substitution
2 selected from the group consisting of, but not limited to, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19,
3 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61,
4 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90, 93, 94, 96, 97, 100,
5 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120, 121, 124, 125, 127,
6 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163,
7 164, 165 and combination thereof in SEQ ID NO: 2.

1 19. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is reactive toward a water soluble polymer that is otherwise unreactive toward any of the
3 20 common amino acids.

1 20. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid comprises a carbonyl group, an acetyl group, an aminooxy group, a hydrazine group, a
3 hydrazide group, a semicarbazide group, an azide group, or an alkyne group.

1 21. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 20, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid comprises a carbonyl group.

1 22. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 21, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid has the structure:



3
4 wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, or substituted aryl; R₂ is H, an alkyl,
5 aryl, substituted alkyl, and substituted aryl; and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an
6 amino terminus modification group, and R₄ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy
7 terminus modification group.

1 23. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 20, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid comprises an aminooxy group.

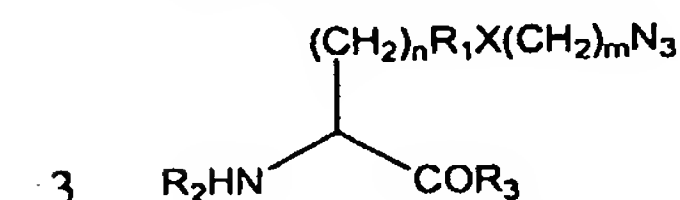
1 24. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 20, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid comprises a hydrazide group.

1 25. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 20, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid comprises a hydrazine group.

1 26. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 20, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid residue comprises a semicarbazide group.

1 27. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 20, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid residue comprises an azide group.

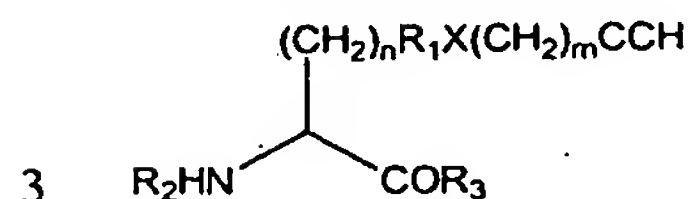
1 28. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 27, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid has the structure:



3
4 wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, substituted aryl or not present; X is
5 O, N, S or not present; m is 0-10; R₂ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus
6 modification group, and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus
7 modification group.

1 29. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 20, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid comprises an alkyne group.

1 30. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 29, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid has the structure:



4 wherein n is 0-10; R₁ is an alkyl, aryl, substituted alkyl, or substituted aryl; X is O, N, S or
5 not present; m is 0-10, R₂ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or an amino terminus
6 modification group, and R₃ is H, an amino acid, a polypeptide, or a carboxy terminus
7 modification group.

1 31. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 4, wherein the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule
2 has a molecular weight of between about 1 and about 100 kDa.

1 32. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 31, wherein the poly(ethylene glycol)
2 molecule has a molecular weight of between 1 kDa and 50 kDa.

1 33. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 4, which is made by reacting a hIFN
2 polypeptide comprising a carbonyl-containing amino acid with a poly(ethylene glycol)
3 molecule comprising an aminooxy, a hydroxylamine, hydrazine, hydrazide or semicarbazide
4 group.

1 34. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 33, wherein the aminooxy, hydroxylamine,
2 hydrazine, hydrazide or semicarbazide group is linked to the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule
3 through an amide linkage.

1 35. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 4, which is made by reacting a poly(ethylene
2 glycol) molecule comprising a carbonyl group with a polypeptide comprising a non-naturally
3 encoded amino acid that comprises an aminooxy, a hydroxylamine, hydrazide or
4 semicarbazide group.

1 36. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 4, which is made by reacting a hIFN
2 polypeptide comprising an alkyne-containing amino acid with a poly(ethylene glycol)
3 molecule comprising an azide moiety.

- 1 37. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 4, which is made by reacting a hIFN
2 polypeptide comprising an azide-containing amino acid with a poly(ethylene glycol)
3 molecule comprising an alkyne moiety.
- 1 38. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 36 or claim 37, wherein the azide or alkyne
2 group is linked to the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule through an amide linkage.
- 1 39. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 4, wherein the poly(ethylene glycol) molecule
2 is a branched or multiarmed polymer.
- 1 40. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 39, wherein each branch of the poly(ethylene
2 glycol) branched polymer has a molecular weight of between 5 kDa and 30 kDa.
- 1 41. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the polypeptide is an hIFN
2 antagonist.
- 1 42. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 41, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is substituted at a position selected from the group consisting of residues including, but
3 not limited to, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 16, 19, 20, 40, 42, 50, 51, 58, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 97, 105, 109,
4 112, 118, 148, 149, 152, 153, 158, 163, 164, 165, and a combination thereof from SEQ ID
5 NO: 2.
- 1 43. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 41, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is linked to a water soluble polymer.
- 1 44. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 43, wherein the water soluble polymer
2 comprises a poly(ethylene glycol) moiety.
- 1 45. The hIFN polypeptide according to claim 43, wherein the non-naturally
2 encoded amino acid is linked to a water soluble polymer is present within the Site II region of
3 the hIFN polypeptide.
- 1 46. The hIFN polypeptide according to claim 43, wherein the non-naturally
2 encoded amino acid linked to a water soluble polymer prevents dimerization of the hIFN
3 receptor by preventing the hIFN antagonist from binding to a second hIFN receptor.

- 1 47. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 1, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid comprises a saccharide moiety.
- 1 48. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 3, wherein the water soluble polymer is linked
2 to the polypeptide via a saccharide moiety.
- 1 49. An isolated nucleic acid comprising a polynucleotide that hybridizes under
2 stringent conditions to SEQ ID NO:24 or SEQ ID NO:25, wherein the polynucleotide
3 comprises at least one selector codon.
- 1 50. The isolated nucleic acid of claim 49, wherein the selector codon is selected
2 from the group consisting of an amber codon, ochre codon, opal codon, a unique codon, a
3 rare codon, and a four-base codon.
- 1 51. A method of making the hIFN polypeptide of claim 3, the method comprising
2 contacting an isolated hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid
3 with a water soluble polymer comprising a moiety that reacts with the non-naturally encoded
4 amino acid.
- 1 52. The method of claim 51, wherein the water soluble polymer comprises a
2 polyethylene glycol moiety.
- 1 53. The method of claim 51, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino acid
2 residue comprises a carbonyl group, an aminooxy group, a hydrazide group, a semicarbazide
3 group, an azide group, or an alkyne group.
- 1 54. The method of claim 51, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino acid
2 residue comprises a carbonyl moiety and the water soluble polymer comprises an aminooxy,
3 a hydroxylamine, hydrazide or semicarbazide moiety.
- 1 55. The method of claim 51, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino acid
2 residue comprises an alkyne moiety and the water soluble polymer comprises an azide
3 moiety.
- 1 56. The method of claim 51, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino acid
2 residue comprises an azide moiety and the water soluble polymer comprises an alkyne
3 moiety.

- 1 57. The method of claim 52, wherein the polyethylene glycol moiety has an
2 average molecular weight of between about 1 and about 100 kDa.
- 1 58. The method of claim 57, wherein the polyethylene glycol moiety is a branched
2 or multiarmed polymer.
- 1 59. A composition comprising the hIFN polypeptide of claim 1 and a
2 pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
- 1 60. The composition of claim 59, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino acid is
2 linked to a water soluble polymer.
- 1 61. A method of treating a patient having a disorder modulated by hIFN
2 comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically-effective amount of the composition
3 of claim 59.
- 1 62. A cell comprising the nucleic acid of claim 49.
- 1 63. The cell of claim 62, wherein the cell comprises an orthogonal tRNA
2 synthetase and an orthogonal tRNA.
- 1 64. A method of making a hIFN polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded
2 amino acid, the method comprising, culturing cells comprising a polynucleotide or
3 polynucleotides encoding a hIFN polypeptide and comprising a selector codon, an orthogonal
4 RNA synthetase and an orthogonal tRNA under conditions to permit expression of the hIFN
5 polypeptide comprising a non-naturally encoded amino acid; and purifying the hIFN
6 polypeptide from the cells.
- 1 65. A method of increasing serum half-life or circulation time of hIFN, the
2 method comprising substituting a non-naturally encoded amino acid for any one or more
3 amino acids in naturally occurring hIFN.
- 1 66. A hIFN polypeptide encoded by a polynucleotide having a sequence shown in
2 SEQ ID NO: 24; or SEQ ID NO: 25, wherein said polypeptide comprises a selector codon,
3 and wherein said polypeptide comprises at least one non-naturally encoded amino acid.

1 67. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 66, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is linked to a water soluble polymer.

1 68. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 69, wherein the water soluble polymer
2 comprises a poly(ethylene glycol) moiety.

1 69. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 66, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid is substituted at a position selected from the group consisting of residues 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6,
3 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46,
4 48, 49, 50, 51, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 89, 90,
5 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 117, 118, 120,
6 121, 124, 125, 127, 128, 129, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 148, 149, 156, 158, 159,
7 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165 from SEQ ID NO: 2.

1 70. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 66, wherein the non-naturally encoded amino
2 acid comprises a carbonyl group, an aminooxy group, a hydrazide group, a hydrazine group,
3 a semicarbazide group, an azide group, or an alkyne group.

1 71. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 68, wherein the poly(ethylene glycol) moiety
2 has a molecular weight of between about 1 and about 100 kDa.

1 72. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 68, wherein the poly(ethylene glycol) moiety
2 has a molecular weight of between 5 kDa and 40 kDa.

1 73. The hIFN polypeptide of claim 68, wherein the polyethylene glycol moiety is
2 a branched or multiarmed polymer.

1 74. A pharmaceutical composition comprising the hIFN polypeptide of claim 66
2 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
3

4 75. The IFN polypeptide of claim 1, 2, 3, 4, 61, 66, 67, or 68, wherein said IFN is
5 selected from a group consisting of consensus IFN, IFN α , IFN β , IFN ϵ , IFN γ , IFN ω , IFN τ ,
6 IFN α -1a, IFN α -1b, IFN α -2a, IFN α -2b, IFN β -1a, IFN β -1b, and IFN γ -1a.

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

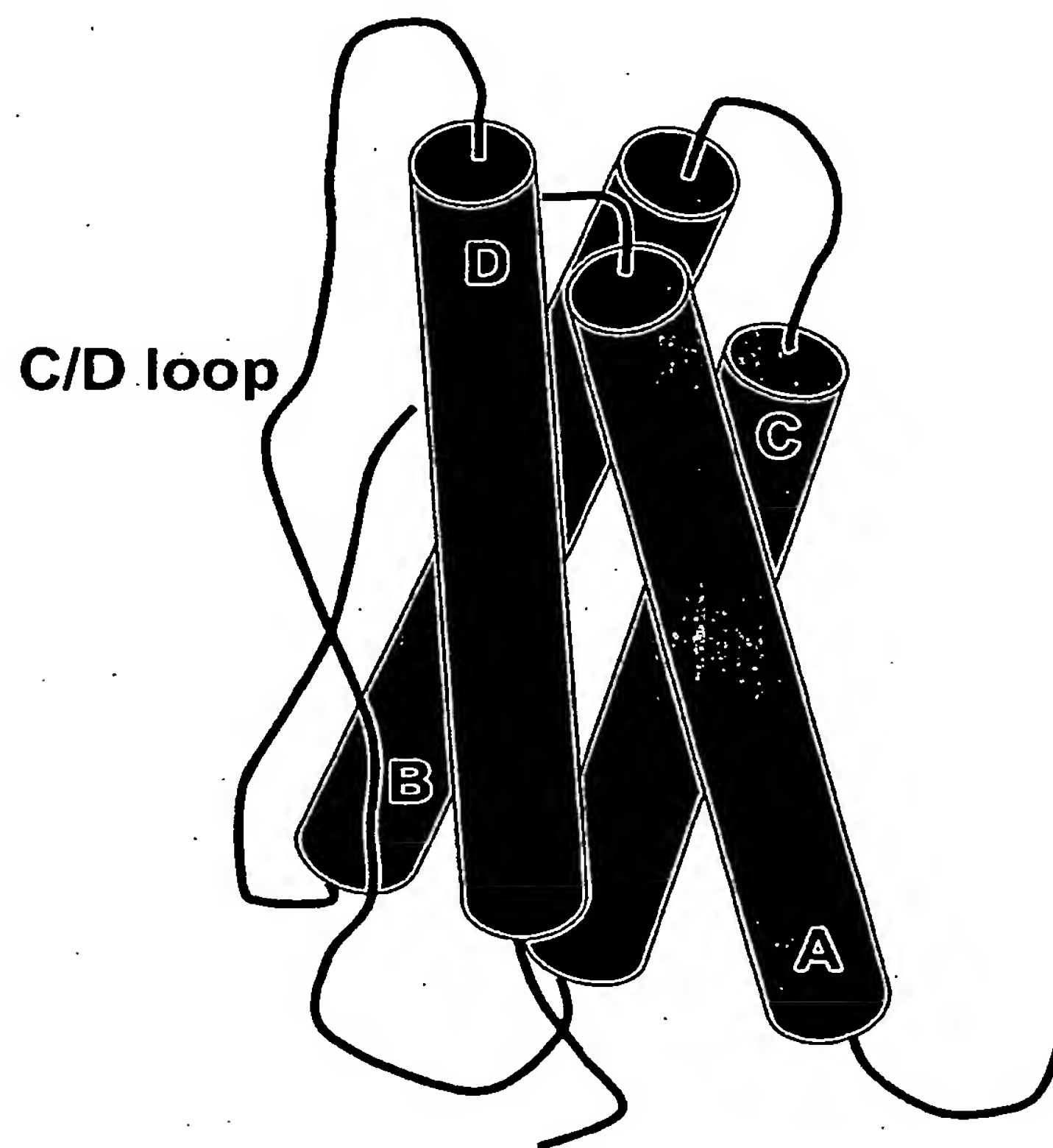
Modified Human IFN Polypeptides and Their Uses

Modified human Interferon (hIFN) polypeptides and uses thereof are provided.

PATENT

Attorney Docket No.: AMBX-0019.00US

Title:	MODIFIED HUMAN IFN POLYPEPTIDES AND THEIR USES		
Inventors:	Ho Sung Cho et al.		
Appl. No.:	Not Assigned		
Atty:	John W. Wallen, III	Telephone:	(858) 731-3603
Docket No.:			

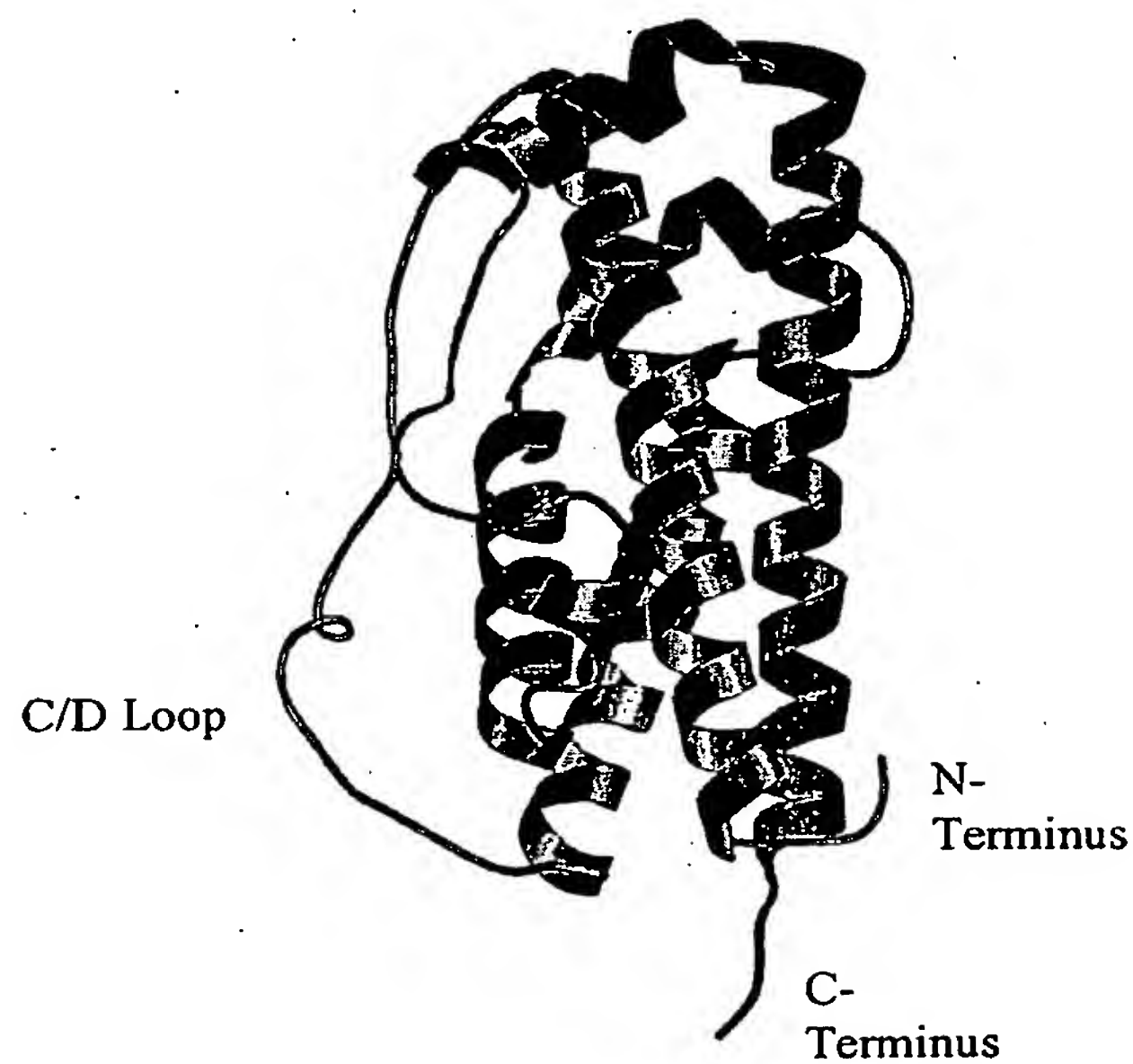


A Four Helical Bundle Protein

PATENT

Attorney Docket No.: AMBX-0019.00US

Title:	MODIFIED HUMAN IFN POLYPEPTIDES AND THEIR USES		
Inventors:	Ho Sung Cho et al.		
Appl. No.:	Not Assigned		
Atty:	John W. Wallen, III	Telephone:	(858) 731-3603
Docket No.:			

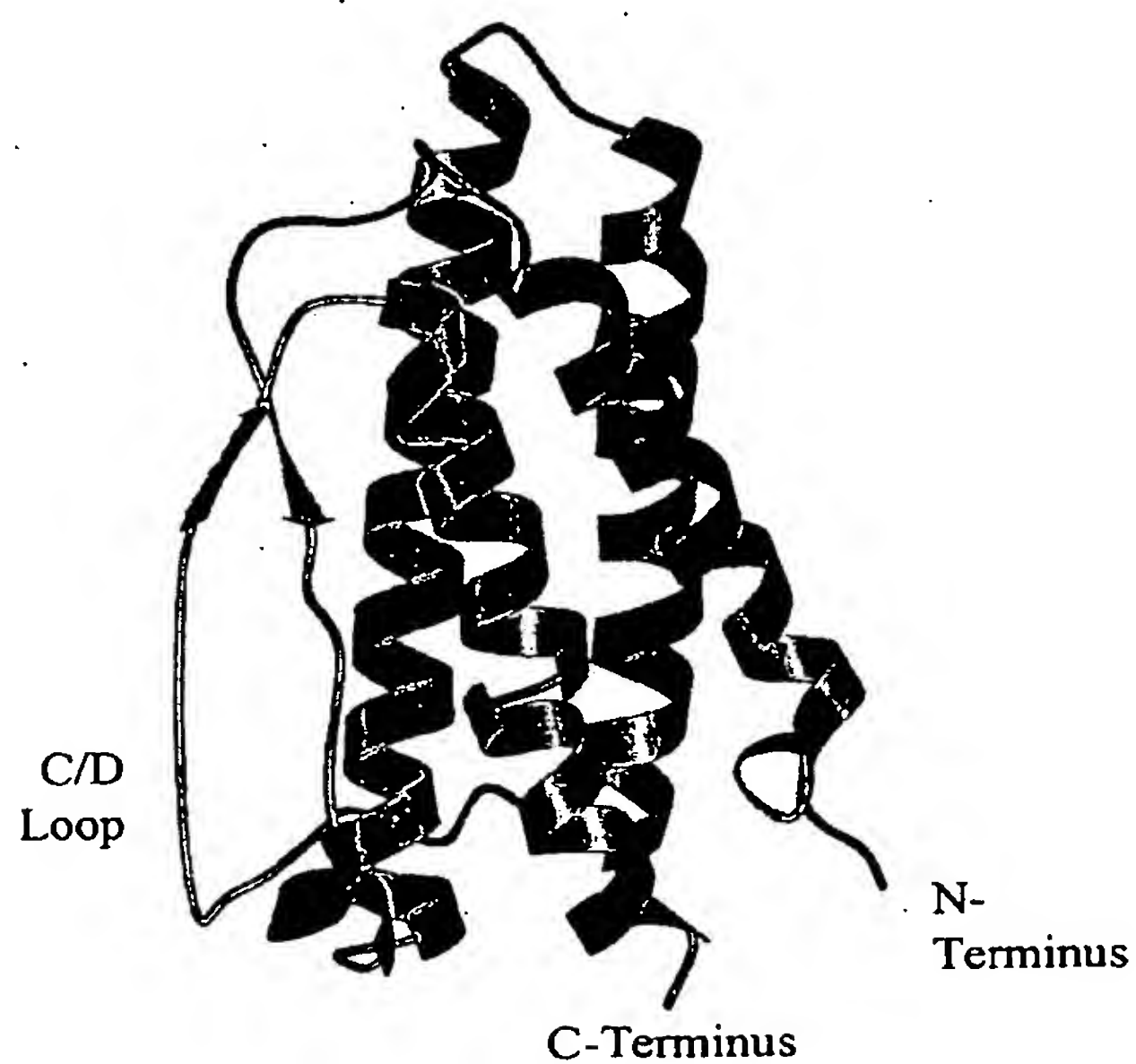


hGH

PATENT

Attorney Docket No.: AMBX-0019.00US

Title:	MODIFIED HUMAN IFN POLYPEPTIDES AND THEIR USES		
Inventors:	Ho Sung Cho et al.		
Appl. No.:	Not Assigned		
Atty:	John W. Wallen, III	Telephone:	(858) 731-3603
Docket No.:			

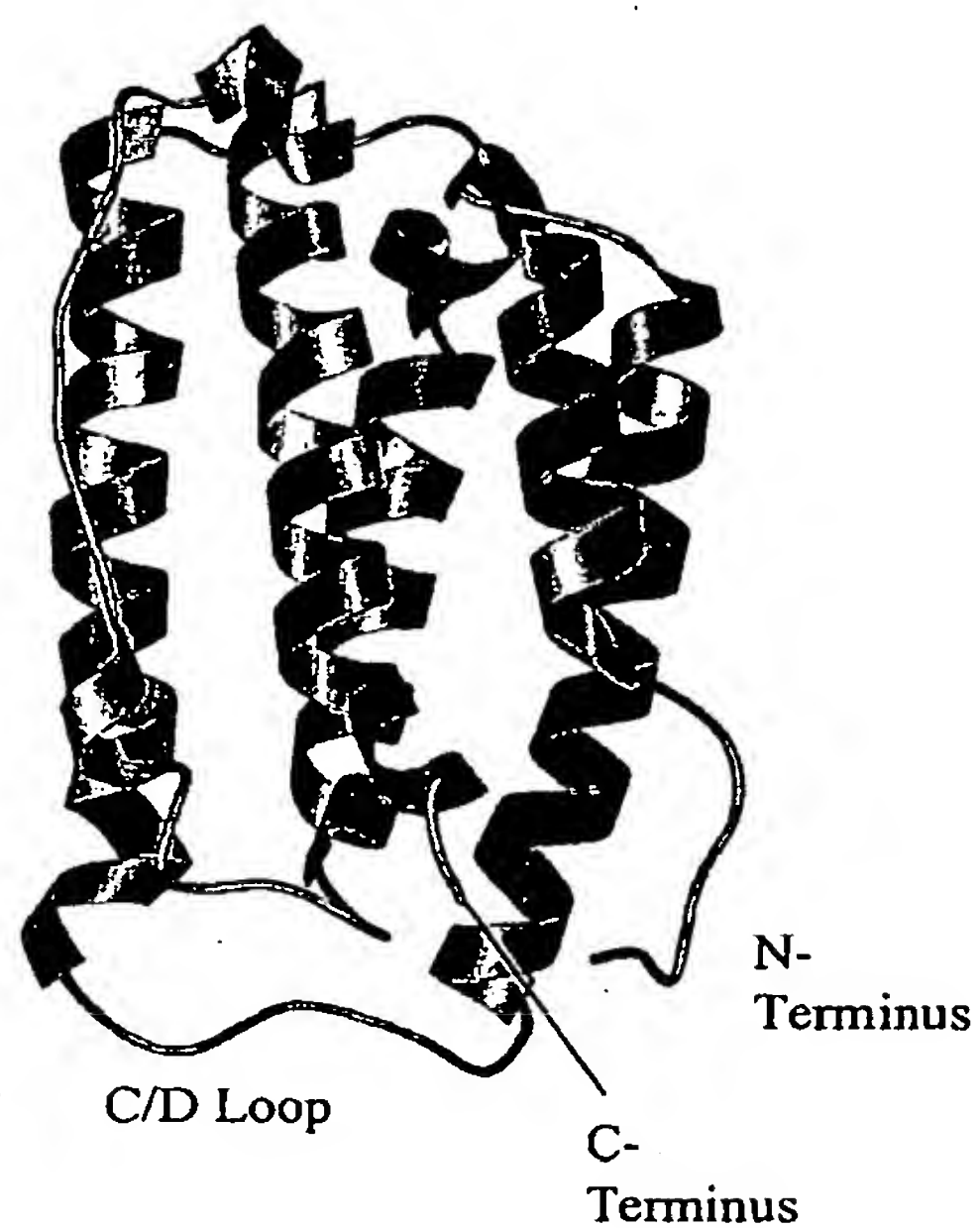


EPO

PATENT

Attorney Docket No.: AMBX-0019.00US

Title:	MODIFIED HUMAN IFN POLYPEPTIDES AND THEIR USES		
Inventors:	Ho Sung Cho et al.		
Appl. No.:	Not Assigned		
Atty:	John W. Wallen, III	Telephone:	(858) 731-3603
Docket No.:			

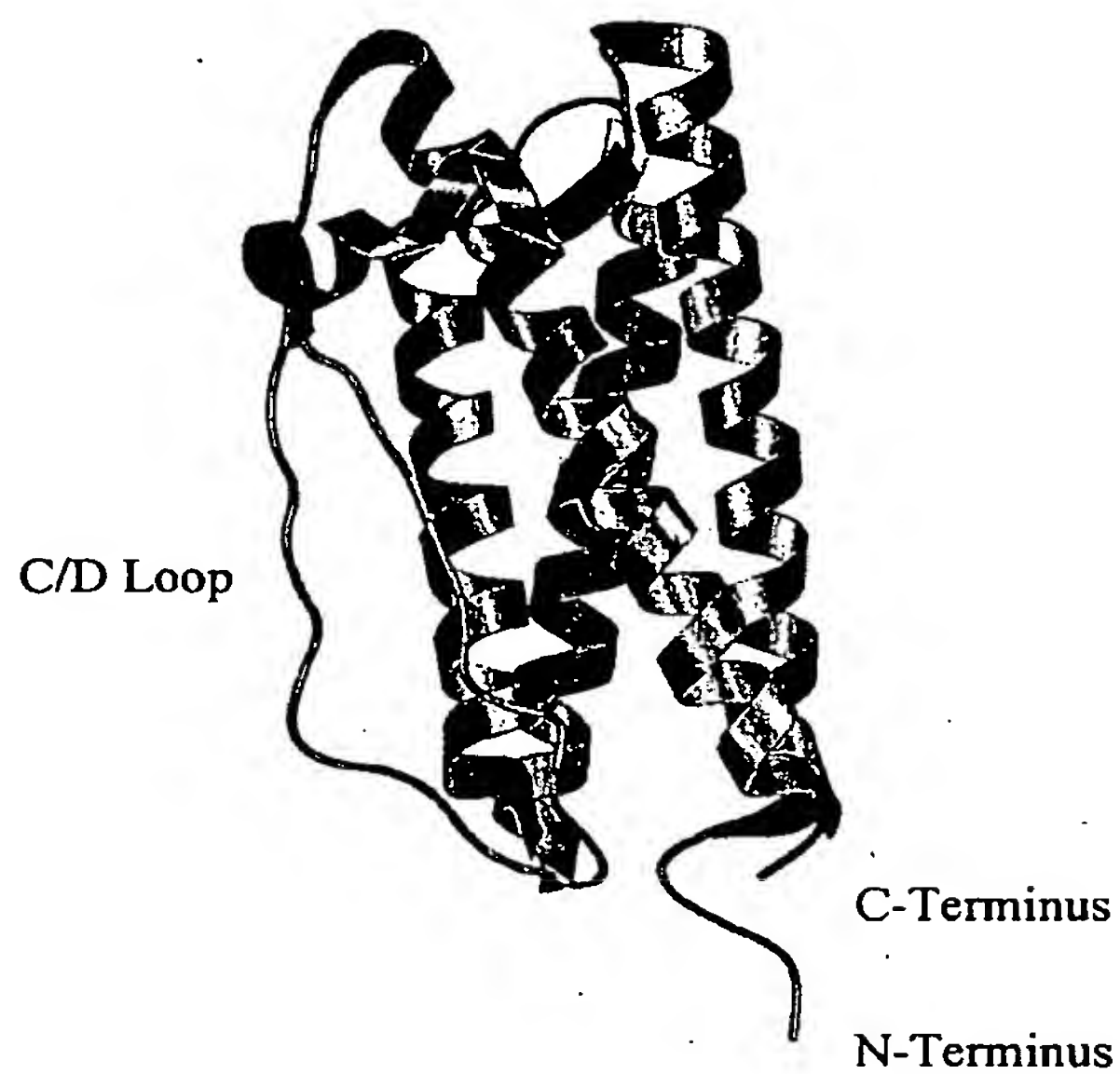


IFN2a

PATENT

Attorney Docket No.: AMBX-0019.00US

Title:	MODIFIED HUMAN IFN POLYPEPTIDES AND THEIR USES		
Inventors:	Ho Sung Cho et al.		
Appl. No.:	Not Assigned		
Atty:	John W. Wallen, III	Telephone:	(858) 731-3603
Docket No.:			



GCSF

SEQUENCE LISTING

SEQ ID #	Sequence	Notes	Protein, nucleic acid, tRNA or RS
1	MALTFALLVALLVLSCSSCSVGCPLPQTHSLGSRRTLMLLAQMRRLSFLSC LKDRHDFGFPQEEFGNQFQKAETIPVLHEMIQQIFNLFSTKDSSAAWDETLL DKFYTELYQQLNDLEACVIQGVGTETPLMKEDSILAVRKYFQRITLYLKEK KYSPCAWEVVRAEIMRSFSLSTNLQESLRSKE	Full-length amino acid sequence of hIFN	protein
2	CDLPQTHSLGSRRTLMLLAQMRRLSFLSCLKDRHDFGFPQEEFGNQFQKAET IPVLHEMIQQIFNLFSTKDSSAAWDETLLDKFYTELYQQLNDLEACVIQGVG VTETPLMKEDSILAVRKYFQRITLYLKEKKYSPCAWEVVRAEIMRSFSLSTN LQESLRSKE	The mature amino acid sequence of hIFN	protein
3	CDLPQTHSLGNRRALILLAQMRRISPFSLKDRHDFGFPQEEFDGNQFQKAQ AISVLHEMIQQTFLNLFSTKDSSAAWDESLEKIFYTELYQQLNDLEACVIEV GVEETPLMNVDSILAVKKYFQRITLYLKEKKYSPCAWEVVRAEIMRSFSLST NLQERLRRKE	The mature amino acid sequence of consensus hIFN	protein
4	CCGGCGGTAGTTCAGCAGGGCAGAACGGCGGACTCTAAATCCGCATGGC GCTGGTTCAAATCCGGCCCGCCGGACCA	<i>M. jannaschii</i> mtRNA ^{Tyr} _{CUA}	tRNA
5	CCCAGGGTAGCCAAGCTCGGCCAACGGCGGACTCTAAATCCGTTCT CGTAGGAGTTCGAGGGTTCGAATCCCTTCCC TGGGACCA	HLAD03; an optimized amber suppressor tRNA	tRNA
6	GCGAGGGTAGCCAAGCTCGGCCAACGGCGGACTTCTAAATCCGTTCT CGTAGGAGTTCGAGGGTTCGAATCCCTCCCCTCGCACCA	HL325A; an optimized AGGA frameshift suppressor tRNA	tRNA
7	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSAGIGFEPGSKIHLGHYLQIKK MID LQNAFGDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS TFQLDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTLKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVNT YYYLGVDVAVGGMEQQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSS KGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-L-phenylalanine <i>p-Az-PheRS(6)</i>	RS
8	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSAGIGFEPGSKIHLGHYLQIKK MID LQNAFGDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS SFQLDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTLKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVNT SHYLGVDVAVGGMEQQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSS KGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-benzoyl-L-phenylalanine <i>p-BpaRS(1)</i>	RS
9	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKAAIGFEPGSKIHLGHYLQIKK MID LQNAFGDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS PQLDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTLKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVNAI YLAVDVAVGGMEQQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSSKG NFIADVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKFGG DLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of propargyl-phenylalanine <i>Propargyl-PheRS</i>	RS
10	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKAAIGFEPGSKIHLGHYLQIKK MID LQNAFGDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS PQLDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTLKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVNAI YLAVDVAVGGMEQQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSSKG NFIADVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKFGG DLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of propargyl-phenylalanine <i>Propargyl-PheRS</i>	RS
11	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKAAIGFEPGSKIHLGHYLQIKK MID LQNAFGDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS PQLDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTLKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVNAI YLAVDVAVGGMEQQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSSKG NFIADVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKFGG DLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of propargyl-phenylalanine <i>Propargyl-PheRS</i>	RS
12	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSATIGFEPGSKIHLGHYLQIKK MID LQNAFGDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS NFQLDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTLKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVN PLHYQGVAVGGMEQQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSS SKGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine <i>p-Az-PheRS(1)</i>	RS

SEQ ID #	Sequence	Notes	Protein, nucleic acid, tRNA or RS
13	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSATIGFEPGSGKIHGHYLQIKKMID LQNAGFDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS SFQDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVNP LHYQGVDAVGGMEQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSS KGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine <i>p-Az-PheRS(3)</i>	RS
14	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSALIGFEPGSGKIHGHYLQIKKMID LQNAGFDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS TFQDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVNP VHYQGVDAVGGMEQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSS KGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine <i>p-Az-PheRS(4)</i>	RS
15	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSATIGFEPGSGKIHGHYLQIKKMID LQNAGFDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS SFQDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVNP SHYQGVDAVGGMEQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSS KGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine <i>p-Az-PheRS(2)</i>	RS
16	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSALIGFEPGSGKIHGHYLQIKKMID LQNAGFDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS EFQDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVN GCHYRGVDVAVGGMEQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSS KGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine (LW1)	RS
17	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSALIGFEPGSGKIHGHYLQIKKMID LQNAGFDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS EFQDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVN GTHYRGVDVAVGGMEQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSS SKGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine (LW5)	RS
18	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSAAIGFEPGSGKIHGHYLQIKKMID LQNAGFDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS EFQDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVN GGHYLGVDVIVGGMEQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSS KGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine (LW6)	RS
19	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSAAIGFEPGSGKIHGHYLQIKKMID LQNAGFDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS RFQDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVN VIHYDGVDAVGGMEQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSS SKGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine (AzPheRS-5)	RS
20	MDEFEMIKRNTSEIIEEELREVLKKDEKSAGIFEPGSGKIHGHYLQIKKMID LQNAGFDIILLADLHAYLNQKGELDEIRKIGDYNKKVFEAMGLKAKYVYGS TFQDKDYTLNVYRLALKTTTKRARRSMELIAREDENPKVAEVIYPIMQVNT YYYLGVDVAVGGMEQRKIHMLARELLPKKVVCIHNPVLTGLDGEKGMSSS KGNFIAVDDSPPEIRAKIKKAYCPAGVVEGNPIMEIAKYFLEYPLTIKRPEKF GGDLTVNSYEELESFLKNKELHPMDLKNVAEELIKILEPIRKRL	Aminoacyl tRNA synthetase for the incorporation of p-azido-phenylalanine (AzPheRS-6)	RS
22	5'3'	Primer for cloning mature hIFN cDNA	
23	5'3'	3'Primer for cloning mature hIFN cDNA	
24	atggccttgacctttgctttactggtggcctcctggtgctcagc tgcaagtcaagctgctctgtgggctgtgatctgcctcaaaccac agcctgggtagcaggaggaccttgatgctcctggcacagatgagg agaatctctcttttctcctgcttgaaggacagacatgactttgga tttccccaggaggagtgtggcaaccagttccaaaaggctgaaacc atccctgtcctccatgagatgatccagcagatcttcaatctcttc agcacaaggactcatctgctgcttgggatgagaccctcctagac aaattctacactgaactctaccagcagctgaatgacctggaagcc tgtgtgatacagggggtgggggtgacagagactcccctgatgaag gaggactccattctggctgtgaggaaatacttccaaagaatcact ctctatctgaaagagaagaaatacagcccttgtgacctgggaggtt gtcagagcagaaatcatgagatcttttctttgtcaaaaacttg	Nucleotide Sequence of full length hIFN	

PATENT

Attorney Docket No.: AMBX-0019.00US

SEQ ID #	Sequence	Notes	Protein, nucleic acid, tRNA or RS
	caagaaagtttaagaagtaaggaatga		
25	tgtgatctgcctcaaaccacagcctgggtagcaggaggaccttg atgctcctggcacagatgaggagaatctctcttttctcctgcttg aaggacagacatgactttggatttccccaggaggagtttggcaac cagttccaaaaggctgaaaccatccctgtcctccatgagatgatc cagcagatcttcaatctcttcagcaciaaaggactcatctgctgct tgggatgagaccctcctagacaaattctacactgaactctaccag cagctgaatgacctggaagcctgtgtgatacagggggtgggggtg acagagactcccctgatgaaggaggactccattctggctgtgagg aaatacttccaaagaatcactctctatctgaaagagaagaaatac agcccttgtgcctgggaggttgtcagagcagaaatcatgagatct ttttctttgtcaacaaacttgcaagaaagtttaagaagtaaggaa tga	Nucleotide sequence of mature hIFN cDNA	